

HUE CITY, JUNE 2015

MANAGEMENT PLAN OF THE COMPLEX OF HUE MONUMENTS  
FOR THE PERIOD 2015 – 2020, VISION 2030

THUA THIEN HUE PROVINCIAL PEOPLE'S COMMITTEE

\*\*\*\*\*

# MANAGEMENT PLAN OF THE COMPLEX OF HUE MONUMENTS FOR THE PERIOD 2015 – 2020, VISION 2030



HUE CITY, JUNE 2015

Implementation Agency:

**Hue Monuments Conservation Centre**

Address: 23 Tong Duy Tan st., Hue City, Viet Nam

Tel: (+84.54).3523237 - 3512751 \*Fax: (+84.54).3526083

E-mail: [huedisan@gmail.com](mailto:huedisan@gmail.com)

Website: [www.hueworldheritage.org.vn](http://www.hueworldheritage.org.vn) & [www.huedisan.com.vn](http://www.huedisan.com.vn)





**THUA THIEN HUE PROVINCIAL PEOPLE'S COMMITTEE**

**\*\*\*\*\***

**MANAGEMENT PLAN  
OF THE COMPLEX OF HUE MONUMENTS  
FOR THE PERIOD 2015 – 2020, VISION 2030**

**HUE CITY, JUNE 2015**

**THUA THIEN HUE PROVINCIAL PEOPLE'S COMMITTEE**

**\*\*\*\*\***

**MANAGEMENT PLAN  
OF THE COMPLEX OF HUE MONUMENTS  
FOR THE PERIOD 2015 – 2020, VISION 2030**

**Hue City, June 2015**

*Government Agency in charge of  
Coordination:*  
**People's Committee of Thừa Thiên  
Huế Province**

*Government Agency in charge of  
Technical Review:*  
**Ministry of Culture, Sports and  
Tourism**

*Implementation Agency:*  
**Huế Monuments Conservation Centre**

*In Coordination with :*  
**UNESCO Office in Viet Nam**  
**Department of Cultural Heritage, Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism**  
**Viet Nam's National Commission for UNESCO**  
**Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism, Thừa Thiên Huế Province**

*International Expert:*  
**Prof. Dr. William Stewart Logan – GS.TS. William Stewart Logan –**  
FASSA; Member of ICOMOS; UNESCO Professor of Heritage and  
Urbanism; Em. Professor at the Cultural Heritage Centre for Asia and the  
Pacific, Alfred Deakin Research Institute (Deakin University, Australia).



## CONTENTS

<b>PREFACE .....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>FOREWORD .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION OF THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS AND OBJECTIVES OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN...15</b>	
1.1. Geographical location .....	15
1.2. Identification of the heritage property .....	16
1.2.1 Huế Capital City and related architectures (Huế Capital City in brief).....	16
1.2.2. Imperial City, Forbidden Purple City and palaces (Đại Nội/Inner city in general) .....	18
1.2.3. Trấn Bình Đài Bastion.....	18
1.2.4. Trấn Hải Thành (Coastal Fort) .....	18
1.2.5. Văn Miếu, Võ Miếu (the Confucius Temple and Military Temple).....	19
1.2.6. Nam Giao esplanade.....	19
1.2.7. Hồ Quyền (Tiger Arena), Voi Ré temple.....	20
1.2.8. Huệ Nam Shrine (Hòn Chén Shrine) .....	21
1.2.9. Thiên Mụ pagoda (Celestial Lady Pagoda).....	21
1.2.10. Gia Long tomb .....	21
1.2.11. Minh Mạng tomb .....	22
1.2.12. Thiệu Trị tomb:.....	23
1.2.13. Tự Đức tomb .....	23
1.2.14. Dục Đức tomb .....	23
1.2.15. Đồng Khánh tomb .....	24
1.2.16. Khải Định tomb:.....	25
1.3. Statement of Significance and Outstanding Universal Value of.....	25
1.4. Objectives of the Management Plan .....	31
<b>CHAPTER 2: THE DESCRIPTION OF MONUMENT(S) AND THE ATTRIBUTES FORMING THE OUTSTANDING UNIVERSAL VALUE OF THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS .....</b>	<b>33</b>
2.1. Huế capital city (Huế Citadel) .....	37
2.1.1 Trấn Bình Đài fortification .....	38
2.1.2. The flag tower .....	38
2.1.3. Quan Tượng Đài (The royal observatory).....	38
2.1.4. Berm: .....	39
2.1.5. Moat.....	39
2.1.6. Glacis.....	39
2.1.7. Protective rivers.....	39
2.1.8. Phú Văn Lâu (pavilion). .....	39

2.1.9. Nghinh Lương Đình .....	39
2.1.10. Thương Bạc Đình .....	39
2.1.11. The Six Ministries: .....	39
2.1.12. The High Security Council:.....	40
2.1.13. The National College: .....	40
2.1.14. The Long An royal palace: .....	40
2.1.15. The Royal Family' Affairs Department (ruin).....	40
2.1.16. The National Historiographers' Office (ruin).....	40
2.1.17. The Royal Library in the middle of Hộc Hải lake .....	40
2.1.18. Tinh Tâm lake.....	40
2.1.19. The Xã Tắc esplanade .....	40
2.3. Trần Hải Thành fortification .....	44
2.4. Văn Miếu, Võ Miếu .....	44
2.4.1. Văn Miếu (Temple of Literature) .....	44
2.4.2. Võ Miếu.....	46
2.5. Nam Giao Esplanade.....	47
2.6. Hồ Quyền (Tiger Arena) .....	50
2.7. Voi Ré (Long Châu or Elephant Roaring) temple.....	51
2.8. Huệ Nam (Hòn Chén) shrine .....	51
2.9. Thiên Mụ pagoda .....	52
2.10. Gia Long tomb (Thiên Thọ tomb) .....	53
2.11. Minh Mạng tomb (Hiếu tomb).....	54
2.12. Thiệu Trị tomb (Xương tomb) .....	55
2.13. Tự Đức tomb (Khiêm tomb) .....	56
2.14. Dục Đức (An Lăng) tomb .....	57
2.15. Đồng Khánh (Tư Lăng) tomb .....	58
2.16. Khải Định (Ứng Lăng) tomb.....	59

### **CHAPTER 3: LEGAL FRAMEWORK, CONCERNED REGULATIONS AND ARTICLES IN THE MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION OF THE HUẾ COMPLEX OF MONUMENTS ..... 61**

3.1. International documents.....	61
3.1.1. Legal documents .....	61
3.1.2. Others documents.....	61
3.2. Legal documents at the national level.....	62



3.3. Legal documents at the local level.....	66
3.4. The specific legal documents for the heritage property.....	70
3.5. The principal legal articles applied for the management and protection of the Complex of Huế Monuments .....	72
3.5.1. The National Law on Cultural Heritage and regulations to implement the Law .....	73
3.5.2. Law on Forest Protection and Development and the regulations to implement the Law .....	74
3.5.3. Biodiversity Law and implementation guiding documents .....	76
3.5.4. Law on Tourism .....	76
3.5.5. Law on Environmental Protection .....	76
3.5.6. Law on Mineral Resources and the regulations to implement the Law .....	77
3.5.7. Legal regulations in some other related documents .....	77
<b>CHAPTER 4: EXISTING AND POTENTIAL IMPACTS ON THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS .....</b>	<b>79</b>
4.1. Potential negative impacts arising from the development.....	80
4.1.1. Transport development.....	80
4.1.2. Construction of residential and high buildings around the relic areas .....	86
4.1.3. Illegal exploitation of sand and gravel in the Hương River .....	89
4.1.4. The encroachment and water pollution.....	91
4.1.5. The inappropriate management mechanisms for the buffer zone of certain heritage sites .....	95
4.1.6. The development of the infrastructure and the impacts of the industrialization and modernization on the heritage environment.....	97
4.1.7. The exploitation of limestone material .....	98
4.1.8. The hydropower development in Hương River .....	99
4.1.9. Building the water dams to prevent from the river inundation in Hue city .....	101
4.2. Environmental pressures .....	102
4.2.1. The surrounding environment and landscape of heritage sites under the impact of urban development.....	102
4.2.2. Harmful insects, micro-organisms and fungi on the wooden components .....	103
4.2.3. Dust, noise and garbage pollution.....	103
4.3. Impacts from the natural disaster risks .....	105

4.3.1. Floods .....	107
4.3.2. Typhoon and tropical low pressure .....	108
4.3.3. Fire.....	109
4.3.4. Landslide .....	110
4.3.5. River and sea bank slide.....	111
4.3.6. Thunder, thunderstorms, whirlwinds.....	113
4.3.7. Saltwater intrusion.....	114
4.3.8. Drought.....	115
4.3.9. Earthquakes .....	116
4.4. Impacts from the tourism development .....	117
4.4.1. Lack of integrated planning and sustainability of tourism development	122
4.4.2. Tourist disturbance by street vendors.....	122
4.4.3. Visitors overload in the heritage sites .....	123
4.5. Pressures from the population growth of the living community at the heritage sites.....	124
4.5.1. Dwelling construction in the area of heritage sites .....	124
4.5.2. The loss and theft of antiquities .....	127
<b>CHAPTER 5: OBJECTIVES AND PROPOSED POLICIES FOR THE MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION OF THE HUÉ COMPLEX OF MONUMENTS FROM NEGATIVE IMPACTS .....</b>	<b>129</b>
5.1. Management of development pressures.....	129
5.1.1. Objectives.....	129
5.1.2. Proposed policies.....	130
5.2. Management of environmental impacts.....	131
5.2.1. Objectives.....	131
5.2.2. Proposed policies.....	132
5.3. Management of Disaster Risks .....	133
5.3.1. Objectives.....	133
5.3.2. Proposed policies.....	134
5.4. Management of tourism impacts.....	135
5.4.1. Objectives.....	135
5.4.2. Proposed policies.....	136
5.5. Management of demographic pressures at the heritage sites.....	136
5.5.1. Objectives.....	136
5.5.2. Proposed policies.....	137
<b>CHAPTER 6: MANAGING AND PROTECTING THE CORE AND BUFFER ZONE OF THE HERITAGE PROPERTY .....</b>	<b>139</b>
6.1. The objectives of management and protection of the core and buffer zone of the heritage property .....	139



6.2. Regulations for the management and protection of the core and buffer zone of the heritage property .....	141
6.2.1. Regulations to protect the core zone of the World Heritage property and the zone1 of the classified national monuments .....	141
6.2.2. Regulation to protect the buffer zone of the World Heritage property and the buffer zone of the classified national monuments.....	141
6.2.3. Orientation of the management and protection of the spatial settings of the Complex of Hué Monuments .....	143
<b>CHAPTER 7: MONITORING .....</b>	<b>149</b>
7.1. Principal indicators to monitor the state of conservation .....	149
7.2. Monitoring mechanism .....	154
7.3. Technical equipment for monitoring.....	156
<b>CHAPTER 8: ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE OF HUÉ MONUMENTS CONSERVATION CENTRE AND THE ORIENTATION OF DEVELOPMENT .....</b>	<b>157</b>
8.1. Existing organizational structure of the Hué Monuments Conservation Centre .....	157
8.2. Future orientation of the Centre.....	165
<b>CHAPTER 9: ACTION PLAN FOR THE PERIOD 2015–2020 AND ORIENTATION OF MANAGEMENT PLAN UNTIL 2030 .....</b>	<b>167</b>
9.1. Updating the Management Plan.....	167
9.2. Action Plan, 2015-2020 .....	167
9.2.1. Conservation and restoration of World Heritage property .....	167
9.2.2. Safeguarding intangible heritage values .....	169
9.2.3. Strengthen the technical capacity of the Hué Royal Antiquities Museum .....	169
9.2.4. Preservation of urban and natural landscape features .....	171
9.2.5. Heritage zoning, clearance and resettlement.....	171
9.2.6. Other Action Plan activities .....	172
9.3. Budget for the Implementation of the Management Plan.....	174
9.4. Orientation of the Management Plan until 2030.....	174
<b>CHAPTER 10: IMPLEMENTATION .....</b>	<b>177</b>
10.1. The role of central agencies .....	177
10.1.1. Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism .....	177
10.1.2. The role of National Cultural Heritage Council.....	179

10.1.3. The role of Vietnam National Commission for UNESCO .....	180
10.1.4. The role of UNESCO Office in Hanoi .....	180
10.1.5. The role of research institutes in country and abroad .....	181
10.2. The role of local authorities and functional organizations .....	181
10.2.1. The role of Thừa Thiên Huế People's Committee .....	181
10.2.2. Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism .....	183
10.2.3. The role of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre .....	184
10.2.4. Department of Agriculture and Rural Development .....	189
10.2.5. Department of Natural Resources and Environment .....	189
10.2.6. Department of Construction .....	190
10.2.7. Department of Transportation .....	190
10.2.8. Department of Science and Technology .....	191
10.2.9. Department of Foreign Affairs .....	192
10.2.10. Department of Education and Training .....	192
10.2.11. Department of Information and Communication .....	193
10.2.12. Department of Industry and Trade .....	193
10.2.13. Department of Health .....	193
10.2.14. Department of Home Affairs .....	194
10.2.15. Department of Planning and Investment .....	194
10.2.16. Department of Finance .....	195
10.2.17. Public Security Department .....	195
10.2.18. Steering Committee for Flood and Storm Prevention and Control - Search and Rescue of Thừa Thiên Huế .....	196
10.2.19. Frontier post at Thuan An port .....	197
10.2.20. People's Committees of districts, towns, Huế city where relics and buffer are distributed .....	197
10.3. The roles of local communities, inhabitants, enterprises, and social – political organizations .....	199
10.3.1. The roles of local communities and inhabitants .....	199
10.3.2. The roles of social and political organizations .....	200
10.3.3. The roles of private sector directly involved in conservation and doing business in heritage sites of Huế Monuments Complex .....	200
<b>REFERENCES .....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>APPENDIXES .....</b>	<b>203</b>



## **PREFACE**

Vietnam joined the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage in 1987. Since then, eight Cultural and Natural Heritage properties have been inscribed on the World Heritage List. Among those, the Complex of Huế Monuments which was inscribed on the World Heritage List at the 17th session of the World Heritage Committee in 1993 became the first World Heritage property of Vietnam. During the last two decades, in order to fully preserve the significant attributes making the Outstanding Universal Value of the Complex of Huế Monuments the Government of Vietnam has considerably invested in the restoration and conservation of many monuments and relics with the UNESCO and other international assistance. Therefore, the Complex of Huế Monuments had overcome the earlier period of restoration emergency and gradually recovered the original appearance of a historical ancient capital, attracting numerous domestic and international visitors, researchers to explore the heritage values.

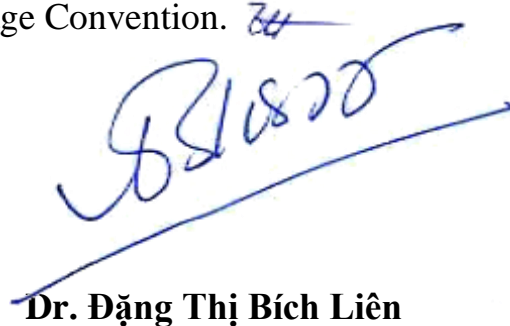
The management plan for the Complex of Huế Monuments has been developed in order to:

- Identify the risks which potentially cause impacts to the property and propose the strategic objectives, management and conservation policies mitigating those risks;

- Propose the key tasks not only in the heritage preservation but also identify the tasks and requirements for concerned government agencies and stakeholders in the implementation of the socio-economic development projects in the province.

- Propose an action plan of heritage preservation which include the clusters of solutions in the period 2015 – 2020 which will be updateable in the five year terms that follow.

This will be a beneficial document for Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and other concerned authorities as well as communities to carry out better and more appropriate preservation in the future. Furthermore, the Management Plan on the Complex of Huế Monuments will also consolidate the legal basis enabling Vietnam to implement its international duty in the preservation, restoration, introduction and transmission this property to future generations in accordance with the World Heritage Convention. 34

A handwritten signature in blue ink, appearing to be 'Đặng Thị Bích Liên', written over a horizontal line.

**Dr. Đặng Thị Bích Liên**  
**Deputy Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry**



## FOREWORD

The Complex of Huế Monuments, which was inscribed as World Cultural Heritage on December 11, 1993 by UNESCO at the 17<sup>th</sup> session of the World Heritage Committee, has been not only the pride of Thừa Thiên Huế people but also of all Vietnamese. During the last twenty years, the site has received the intensive support of the international community including UNESCO, as well as of the national, local authorities and local people in the preservation of the Outstanding Universal Value, the integrity and the authenticity of the property, and it has been able to overcome the emergency conditions then prevailing and reached stability and sustainable development. Among the intense efforts made, the following deserve mention:

- The governments of Vietnam and Thừa Thiên Huế Province have applied thoroughly all regulations set in the international framework to which Viet Nam was committed in the preservation of the Huế Heritage property, particularly the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention. At the same time, the Government of Vietnam issued the legal documents and regulations at central and local levels in order to give strong protection to the Outstanding Universal Value of the heritage property.

- Only three years after the site's inscription in the World Heritage List, the "Master Plan for the Preservation and Enhancement of the Complex of Huế Monuments' Values in the period 1996-2010" was officially approved by the Government of Vietnam. Following this, the "Adjusted Master Plan for the Preservation and Enhancement of the Complex of Huế Monuments' Values in the period 2010-2020" was also approved in 2010, allowing a budget location of thousands of billion VND for the protection and promotion of the site. In order to achieve the set immediate and long-term objectives of the Master Plan, many activities were carried out in the preservation of both cultural and natural heritage aspects, because the property has been a complex of the tangible and spiritual values as well as the natural and environmental landscapes.

- The Huế Monuments Conservation Centre (HMCC) has been assigned and proved its essential role in the management and preservation of the entire Complex of Huế Monuments under the direct guidance of Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee, the professional guidance of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism and the support of the Vietnam National Commission for UNESCO.

Through the intensive efforts in implementing the conservation activities, most of the relics of the Complex of Huế Monuments have been restored and preserved with various conservation methods such as anti-leakage, anti-corruption, anti-termite, anti-tree encroachment, and the reinforcement as well as replacement of the decayed elements. A good number of major relics as well as the outer settings were rehabilitated and redecorated, were thus returned to the original lively appearance. It should be noted that the relics were restored in accordance with the provisions of the World Heritage Convention and the international conservation charters. This practice in conservation has been highlighted and appreciated by many national and international scholars. With thorough participation in the conservation process, both management staff and technical personnel of the HMCC have considerably built up their expertise and skills. They have become nowadays the key actors leading in all aspects of Huế's heritage preservation.

Within the framework of the *“Adjusted Master Plan for the Preservation and Enhancement of the Values of the Complex of Huế Monuments in the period 2010-2020”* the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre (HMCC) was assigned by the Provincial People's Committee to develop a Management Plan for the property, in cooperation with national and international experts. This plan is expected to include both immediate and long-term strategies, policies and action plans to mitigate the damages caused by natural disasters, to protect the heritage from the development pressures, particularly those pressures from the environment degradation and the rapid tourism growth as well as the impacts

from residents living within and around the sites, and to deal with day-to-day incidents that might arise at the property. Furthermore, the Management Plan is also expected to address the need for education and promotion of the heritage significance and values in contribution to the future sustainable development. At the same time, the objectives of strengthening the connection between the heritage and the local community and improving local people's economic benefits from the heritage have also been set among the objectives of the Management Plan.

It should be emphasized that in the process of developing this Site Management Plan, Thua Thien Hue Province has received the enthusiastic and effective support of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, the National Department of Cultural Heritage, the National Committee for Cultural Heritage, the Vietnam National Commission for UNESCO, the UNESCO Hanoi Office, together with the leading Vietnamese and international experts in the field of World Heritage management. In particular, apart from the Government's personnel and financial investment, HMCC also received the meaningful financial and technical support from the International Assistance of the World Heritage Centre of UNESCO, ICOMOS and UNESCO Ha Noi Office. Significantly, Professor, Dr. William Stewart Logan, member of Australian ICOMOS was engaged in conducting the field surveys and provided valuable inputs for the completion of this Management Plan.

The Management Plan of the Complex of Huế Monuments has been developed in a wide consultation with all relevant stakeholders including local community and relating governmental agencies. The first phase of the Management Plan's implementation is between 2015 and 2020. After the first phase of implementation, the Management Plan will be reviewed and updated every five years. Accordingly, the Action Plan with concrete activities programmed in order to achieve the long-term objectives and conservation strategies will also be discussed and adjusted every five years.

It should be highlighted, too, that not only the responsible government agencies in charge of this Plan's Implementation but also all the people living in the region share the honour and ownership of this legacy.

Thừa Thiên Huế Province looks forward to the continuous cooperation and support of national and international organizations and individuals, through which the objectives in the Management Plan of the Complex of Huế Monuments can be successfully achieved.



**H.E. Nguyễn Văn Cao**

**Chairman of Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee**





*Photos 1 & 2: International and national experts attended the Consultation Workshop on the Site Management Plan of the Complex of Huế Monuments (October 2014)*



# **CHAPTER 1**

## **INTRODUCTION OF THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS AND OBJECTIVES OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN**

### **1.1. Geographical location**

The Complex of Huế Monuments was recognized as World Cultural Heritage in 1993. This complex includes a series of monuments scattered on a vast area belonging to the territory of Phú Vang district, Hương Trà town, Hương Thủy town and Huế city in Thừa Thiên Huế province, Central of Vietnam. The coordination of the Complex of Huế monuments is between 16°21'43" - 16°33'16" North and between 107°35'42" – 107°39'17 East". Among these monuments, the most important one is Huế capital city that was chosen as the national capital of Vietnam between 1802 – 1945 by the Nguyễn dynasty, the last monarchical dynasty of Vietnamese history. Hence, Huế capital city is the last capital of the monarchical dynasties in Vietnam.

During 143 years of its existence, the Nguyễn dynasty had 13 emperors including:

1. Gia Long (1802 – 1819).
2. Minh Mạng (1820 – 1840).
3. Thiệu Trị (1841 – 1847).
4. Tự Đức (1848 – 1883).
5. Dục Đức (3 days from July 22 – 24, 1883).
6. Hiệp Hòa (4 months of 1883).
7. Kiến Phúc (1883 – 1884, 8 months).
8. Hàm Nghi (1884 – 1885).
9. Đồng Khánh (1886 – 1888).
10. Thành Thái (1889 – 1907).
11. Duy Tân (1907 – 1916).
12. Khải Định (1916 – 1925).
13. Bảo Đại (1926-1945).

Huế City is currently the first level city which is equal level to an urban district and belongs to Thừa Thiên Huế province. By road it is 658 km south of Hanoi and 1.075 km north of Hồ Chí Minh City. The natural geographical physical features shape the poetic landscape of the overall planning of Huế capital city in general and that of the Complex of Huế Monuments in particular.

Huế capital city is the main part of the Complex of Huế Monuments- the World Cultural Heritage that presently still preserves its appearance as a defensive capital under the Nguyễn Dynasty, consisting of many architectural and landscape elements that were well designed and constructed systematically on the basis of the ancient feng-shui principles in harmony with the surrounding natural landscape.

## **1.2. Identification of the heritage property**

The complex of Huế Monuments was inscribed at the 17<sup>th</sup> session of the World Heritage Committee by UNESCO in 1993 with the series of monuments mentioned in the 1993 nomination dossier. In 2012, in the Retrospective Inventory for identifying the geographical information of the Cultural and Natural heritage properties inscribed up to 1998, Vietnam sent to the World Heritage Centre the geographical maps with the detailed co- ordinate information of the monument zoning areas belonging to the Complex of Huế monuments (included in the nomination dossier submitted to UNESCO in 1993) as follows:

***1.2.1 Huế Capital City and related architectures (Huế Capital City in brief)*** are presently located to the administrative areas of Thuận Thành, Thuận Lộc, Thuận Hòa, Tây Lộc, Phú Hòa, Phú Bình and Phú Thuận wards of Huế city. Huế capital city was recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 873-QĐ/BVHTT dated May 12, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The total area of the World Heritage Property Huế capital city (including the Imperial City and the Trần Bình Đài bastion) is 1.597.100m<sup>2</sup> and the buffer zone is



719.300m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of the core zones and buffer zones of the Heritage Property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of the Huế citadel core zones of the heritage property</b>			<b>Corner coordinates of the Huế citadel buffer zone</b>		
Corner points	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner points	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M1	1821606.22	561968.54	1	1823901.27	561161.82
M2	1821599.31	561967.09	2	1822089.51	562537.80
M3	1821161.61	561376.76	3	1821705.35	562376.39
M4	1821162.28	561369.65	4	1820754.21	560731.47
M5	1821701.09	560968.26	5	1822584.03	559370.39
M6	1821707.97	560970.11			
M7	1822144.76	561556.99			
M8	1822142.13	561563.48			

Within the area of Huế Imperial city, there are other related monuments under the direct management of the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, as assigned by Thừa Thiên Huế provincial People's Committee, including:

- Long An Palace is located at Thuận Thành ward, Huế city, recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 872-QĐ/BVHTT dated May 12, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

- Quốc Tử Giám (Royal College) is located at Thuận Thành ward, Huế city, recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 99/2004/QĐ-VHTT dated December 15, 2004 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

- Tàng Thơ pavilion and Học Hải Lake are at Thuận Lộc, Huế city, recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 99/2004/QĐ-BVHTT dated December 15, 2004 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

- Tịnh Tâm lake is located at Thuận Lộc and Thuận Thành wards, Huế city, recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 99/2004/QĐ-BVHTT dated December 15, 2004 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

- Tam Tòa (Cơ Mật Viện: former royal High Security Council) is located at Thuận Thành, Huế city, recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 99/2004/QĐ-BVHTT dated December 15, 2004 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

- Xã Tắc esplanade is located at Thuận Hòa ward, Huế city (restored in 2008), recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 99/2006/QĐ-BVHTT dated December 13, 2006 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

**1.2.2. Imperial City, Forbidden Purple City and palaces (Đại Nội/Inner city in general)** is located within Huế capital city, at Thuận Thành and Thuận Hòa wards, Huế city; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 54-VHTT/QĐ dated April 29, 1979 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).

**1.2.3. Trấn Bình Đài Bastion** is an extra defensive fort of Huế capital city. It is located next to the main wall's moat, Thuận Lộc ward, Huế city.

**1.2.4. Trấn Hải Thành (Coastal Fort)** is located at Thuận An town, Phú Vang district; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 871-QĐ/BVHTT dated May 12, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Trấn Hải Thành is 12,734.3m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of the Trấn Hải Thành coastal fort World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of the Trấn Hải Thành coastal fort World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1831129.48	569679.72	4	<b>1831006.28</b>	569663.08
2	1831096.53	569749.83	5	1831054.55	569628.01

3	1831029.10	569742.91	6	1831097.59	569633.19
---	------------	-----------	---	------------	-----------

### **1.2.5. Văn Miếu, Võ Miếu (the Confucius Temple and Military Temple)**

belong to Hương Long ward, Huế city and Hương Hồ ward, Hương Trà town; Văn Miếu was recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2890-VH/QĐ dated September 27, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Văn Miếu and Võ Miếu is 97,327.8m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Văn Miếu and Võ Miếu World Heritage property are as of follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Văn Miếu and Võ Miếu World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M1	1819598.48	557118.41	M12	1819910.58	557223.23
M2	1819627.03	557105.34	M13	1819896.59	557297.05
M3	1819764.13	557443.55	M14	1819920.23	557405.53
M4	1819807.79	557526.17	M15	1819913.56	557521.60
M5	1819858.30	557653.41	M16	1819926.86	557568.19
M6	1819790.36	557664.08	M17	1819938.14	557591.24
M7	1819772.17	557575.23	M18	1819936.71	557607.10
M8	1819649.49	557134.19	M19	1819860.37	557627.03
M9	1819723.59	557106.41	M20	1819824.39	557538.66
M10	1819792.04	557084.03	M21	1819769.61	557429.20
M11	1819844.42	557218.78	M22	1819691.20	557235.85

**1.2.6. Nam Giao esplanade** is located at Trường An and Thủy Xuân wards, Huế city. It is recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2890-VH/QĐ dated September 27, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Nam Giao esplanade is 124,107m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Nam Giao esplanade World Heritage property are as of follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Nam Giao esplanade World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1818255.82	562103.99	3	1817796.04	561839.84

2	1817874.01	562190.45	4	1818181.61	561836.79
---	------------	-----------	---	------------	-----------

**1.2.7. Hồ Quyền (Tiger Arena), Voi Ré temple** are located at Thủy Biều ward, Huế city; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2009/1998/QĐ-BVHTT dated 26/9/1998 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the Hồ Quyền-Voi Ré World Heritage Property is 24,531.7m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Hồ Quyền and Voi Ré World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Hồ Quyền World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M1	1819314.615	558988.787	M9	1819300.993	559058.321
M2	1819268.907	558994.780	M10	1819312.680	559056.660
M3	1819265.304	558989.952	M11	1819310.000	559051.877
M4	1819262.190	558992.407	M12	1819316.158	559047.417
M5	1819250.449	559030.723	M13	1819313.688	559043.400
M6	1819259.724	559056.420	M14	1819330.146	559029.170
M7	1819283.593	559064.107	M15	1819334.257	559017.260
M8	1819295.832	559064.077	M16	1819334.964	559007.782

<b>Corner coordinates of Voi Ré World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M17	1819260.422	558763.722	M28	1819132.700	558913.958
M18	1819241.055	558772.064	M29	1819146.668	558940.535
M19	1819239.271	558777.266	M30	1819164.453	558973.993
M20	1819221.492	558792.906	M31	1819210.523	558946.537
M21	1819216.273	558787.791	M32	1819225.936	558919.521
M22	1819187.297	558813.231	M33	1819222.797	558917.672
M23	1819185.027	558810.153	M34	1819246.991	558898.320
M24	1819165.356	558824.119	M35	1819243.376	558873.269
M25	1819119.896	558843.037	M36	1819295.339	558831.955
M26	1819106.986	558862.929	M37	1819289.623	558820.696



M27	1819106.539	558869.857			
-----	-------------	------------	--	--	--

**1.2.8. Huệ Nam Shrine (Hòn Chén Shrine)** is located at Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà town; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2009/1998/QĐ-BVHTT dated September 26, 1998 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Hòn Chén shrine is 8,685m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Huệ Nam shrine World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Huệ Nam shrine World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1816467.800	559937.820	5	1816315.420	559930.030
2	1816467.720	559948.560	6	1816295.630	559847.850
3	1816348.490	559958.240	14	1816470.560	559723.850
4	1816316.390	559934.130			

**1.2.9. Thiên Mụ pagoda (Celestial Lady Pagoda)** is located at Hương Long ward, Huế city and Hương Hồ ward, Hương Trà town; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 1964-QĐ/VH dated August 27, 1996 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Thiên Mụ pagoda is 42,385.5m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Thiên Mụ pagoda World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Thiên Mụ pagoda World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1820033.31	557971.81	4	1819828.00	557874.99
2	1819698.32	558050.55	5	1819873.68	557856.56
3	1819682.90	558002.13	6	1820000.71	557840.14

**1.2.10. Gia Long tomb** is located at Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà town; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2890-VH/QĐ dated September 27, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage

Property of Gia Long tomb is 207,198m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Gia Long tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Gia Long tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1810226.590	563223.280	11	1809546.270	563571.790
2	1810181.630	563464.800	12	1809566.480	563482.560
3	1810073.580	563448.660	13	1809569.000	563345.260
4	1810031.790	563575.270	14	1809632.860	563296.740
5	1809874.320	563523.600	15	1809779.320	563408.010
6	1809815.670	563785.320	16	1809841.230	563425.770
7	1809763.970	563791.920	17	1810981.430	563326.780
8	1809747.110	563863.160	18	1810042.490	563261.650
9	1809598.600	563703.080	19	1810058.320	563208.730
10	1809496.530	563729.690	20	1810076.930	563190.330

**1.2.11. Minh Mạng tomb** is located at Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà town; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 54-VHTT/QĐ dated April 29, 1979 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Minh Mạng tomb is 341,534.3m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Minh Mạng tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Minh Mạng tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M2	1812840.050	560744.850	M12	1812624.370	561035.820
M3	1812811.920	560863.100	M13	1812539.300	560942.280
M4	1812748.620	560946.550	M14	1812372.590	560797.190
M5	1812791.250	560981.530	M15	1812209.670	560659.070
M6	1812743.750	560991.700	M16	1812226.520	560641.130
M7	1812762.660	561055.500	M17	1812248.440	560612.250
M8	1812717.350	561083.260	M18	1812233.430	560598.180
M9	1812691.030	561053.580	M19	1812249.350	560584.460
M10	1812679.720	561060.180	M20	1812253.710	560586.040
M11	1812681.530	561096.640	M21	1812268.660	560577.310

**1.2.12. Thiệu Trị tomb** is located at Thủy Bằng commune, Hương Thủy town; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2890-VH/QĐ dated September 27, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Thiệu Trị tomb is 279,011m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Thiệu Trị tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Thiệu Trị tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1816104.89	561124.29	4	1815469.65	560806.05
2	1815736.12	561320.83	5	1815946.21	560700.22
3	1815555.49	561018.94			

**1.2.13. Tự Đức tomb** is located at Thủy Xuân ward, Huế city; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 54-VHTT/QĐ dated April 29, 1979 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Tự Đức tomb is 129,986.8m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Tự Đức tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Tự Đức tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1817741.02	560103.49	5	1817385.46	560293.63
2	1817760.38	560295.13	6	1817376.65	560180.43
3	1817663.06	560396.09	7	1817565.29	559972.46
4	1817493.09	560424.59			

**1.2.14. Dục Đức tomb** is located at An Cựu ward, Huế city; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2890-VH/QĐ dated September 27, 1997 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Dục

Đức tomb is 85,476.7m<sup>2</sup>. The corner coordinates of Đức Đức tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Đức Đức tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M1	1819767.970	563080.840	M12	1819305.060	563107.630
M2	1819765.480	563087.590	M13	1819301.610	563104.290
M3	1819754.850	563116.390	M14	1819328.440	563098.350
M4	1819719.220	563182.000	M15	1819384.170	563070.350
M5	1819730.430	563188.510	M16	1819420.060	563050.890
M6	1819712.270	563319.510	M17	1819466.740	563000.790
M7	1819690.280	563314.830	M18	1819504.820	563019.700
M8	1819564.780	563281.320	M19	1819555.000	563023.660
M9	1819519.260	563266.170	M20	1819632.830	563034.860
M10	1819456.940	563231.820	M21	1819713.460	563073.290
M11	1819329.270	563125.350	M22	1819741.400	563068.800

**1.2.15. Đồng Khánh tomb** is located at Thủy Xuân ward, Huế city; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 2009/1998-QĐ-BVHTT dated September 26, 1998 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Đồng Khánh tomb is 22,942.6m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Đồng Khánh tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Đồng Khánh tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
1	1817390.78	560652.46	8	1817110.60	560529.92
2	1817330.04	560626.21	9	1817075.58	560505.45
3	1817327.66	560683.54	10	1817029.77	560458.24
4	1817163.65	560733.70	11	1816984.30	560456.84
5	1817182.86	560554.28	12	1816994.84	560586.28
6	1817220.19	560483.07	13	1816957.72	560611.74
7	1817282.04	560543.76			

**1.2.16. Khải Định tomb** is located at Thủy Bằng commune, Hương Thủy town; recognized as the National Monument at the Decision No. 54-VHTT/QĐ dated April 29, 1979 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present-day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism). The area of the World Heritage Property of Khải Định tomb is 181,794.6m<sup>2</sup>. Corner coordinates of Khải Định tomb World Heritage property are as follows:

<b>Corner coordinates of Khải Định tomb World Heritage property</b>					
Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000		Corner point	Coordinate VN-2000	
	X(m)	Y(m)		X(m)	Y(m)
M1	1813817.76	562545.18	M22	1813573.92	562935.33
M8	1814160.57	562877.90	M27	1813810.32	562744.01
M16	1813846.62	563199.87			

Overall, these abovementioned monuments are the elements of the complex of Huế monuments inscribed in 1993. Total area of the Huế Complex of Monuments - the World Heritage property is of 3,154.815.3m<sup>2</sup> and the buffer zone is of 719,300m<sup>2</sup>.

At the national level, the mentioned elements were also recognized as the National Heritages by the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism in order to effectively protect the heritage in the framework of the Law on Cultural Heritage. Each monument was clearly identified in the National Heritage's dossiers, including "Zone I" and "Zone II" according to the Article 32 of the Law on Cultural Heritage 2001, amended and supplemented in 2009.

### **1.3. Statement of Significance and Outstanding Universal Value of the Huế Complex of Monuments**

The importance of the Complex of Huế Monuments has been highlighted both in the site's inscription in the World Heritage List and in the List of National Special Heritage by the Prime Minister at the Decision No. 1272/QĐ-Ttg dated 12 August 2009 for its specific historical, cultural, landscape and architectural values.



The Retrospective Statement of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Complex of Huế monuments was approved at the 38<sup>th</sup> session of the World Heritage Committee in Doha (Qatar) on June 15-25, 2014, as of follows:

**THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS -**

**STATEMENT OF THE OUTSTANDING UNIVERSAL VALUE**

**Brief Synthesis**

The Complex of Huế Monuments is located in and around Huế City in Thừa Thiên-Huế Province in the geographical centre of Vietnam and with easy access to the sea. Established as the capital of unified Vietnam in 1802 CE, Huế was not only the political but also the cultural and religious centre under the Nguyễn Dynasty, the last royal dynasty of Vietnamese history, from 1802 to 1945 CE.

The plan of the new capital is in accordance with ancient oriental philosophy, and respected the physical conditions of the site.

The Ngự Bình Mountain (known as the Royal Screen) and the Hương River, which runs through the city, give this unique feudal capital an entire setting of great natural beauty as well defining its symbolic importance. The site was chosen for a combination of natural features – hills representing a protective screen in front of the monuments or taking the role of “a blue dragon” to the left and “a white tiger” to the right – which shields the main entrance and prevents the entry of malevolent spirits. Within this landscape, the main features of the city are laid out.

The structures of the Complex of Huế Monuments are carefully placed within the natural setting of the site and aligned cosmologically with the Five Cardinal Points (centre, west, east, north, south), the Five Elements (earth, metal, wood, water, fire), and the Five Colours (yellow, white, blue, black, red).

The central structure is the Huế Citadel area which was the administrative centre of southern Viet Nam during the 17th and 18th centuries CE. Within the Huế Citadel were located not only administrative and military functions of the Empire, but also the Imperial Residence, the Hoàng Thanh (Imperial City), the

Tu Cam Thanh (Forbidden Purple City) and related royal palaces.

Tran Binh Dai, an additional defensive work in the north-east corner of the Capital City, was designed to control movement on the river. Another fortress, Tran Hai Thanh, was constructed a little later to protect the capital against assault from the sea.

Outside the Capital City there are several associated monuments of importance. In the outlying areas were located important ritual sites related to the spiritual life of the dynasty such as the Van Mieu (Temple of Literature), the Dan Nam Giao (Esplanade of Sacrifice to the Heaven and Earth), the Ho Quyen (Royal Area), the Den Voi Re (Temple of the Roaring Elephant), and the Thiên Mụ pagoda (Celestial Lady Pagoda). Further upstream, arranged along the Hương River were the tombs of the dynasty's emperors.

The Complex of Huế Monuments is a remarkable example of the planning and construction of a complete defended capital city in a relatively short period in the early years of the 19th century CE. The integrity of the town layout and building design make it an exceptional specimen of late feudal urban planning in East Asia.

***Criterion iv:** To be an outstanding example of a type of building, architectural or technological ensemble or landscape which illustrates (a) significant stage(s) in human history*

The Complex of Huế Monuments is an outstanding example of an eastern feudal capital.

### **Integrity**

The integrity of the property is to be found in the intact condition of the complex of monuments and, especially, in the significance of its landscape setting which derives from the use of geomantic principles in determining the siting and design of the monuments. Sites chosen were a combination of natural features – hills representing a protective screen in front of the monuments, a blue dragon to the left and a white tiger to the right – which shield the main entrance and prevent the entry of malevolent spirits. A

winding river flowing in front of or around the site added to its propitious location. Within this landscape the main features of the city were laid out. The central structure is the Citadel within which were located not only the administrative and military functions of the Empire, but also the Imperial Residence. In the outlying areas were located important ritual sites such as the Van Mieu (Temple of Literature), the Dan Nam Giao (Esplanade of Sacrifice to the Heaven and Earth), the Ho Quyen (Royal Area), the Den Voi Re (Temple of the Roaring Elephant), and the Chua Thiên Mụ (Celestial Lady Pagoda). Further upstream, ranged along the Hương River were the tombs of the dynasty's emperors, arranged in ascending chronological order.

### **Authenticity**

The authenticity of the Complex of Huế Monuments may be understood through the unique layout of the design of the site, which became the imperial capital of the Vietnam Empire in the 19th and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. The basic architectural and landscape features of the site have been maintained intact since their original construction in the early 19th century CE.

The natural setting of the Hương River, within which the citadel, temples and tombs have been laid out in accordance with geomantic principles, demonstrates the symbolic meaning, beauty and significance of the site. The original plan within this setting remains evident. However some of the attributes that allow understanding of the wider relationship with the river are outside the boundary. The overall setting of the town within its landscape could be compromised by urbanization and development of infrastructure.

Although some of the structures are now in ruins, and most of the significant existing monuments have been partially restored, this has been carried out using traditional techniques and materials, according to international professional standards of conservation to ensure that the authenticity of the monuments has been maintained.

There continue to be concerns that threats from flooding, insect damage and inappropriate development within the site could affect its authenticity and

the ability of the site to demonstrate its Outstanding Universal Value

### **Protection and management requirements**

During the 19th century CE, such conservation as was needed on the Huế Monuments was carried out routinely by the Royal Ministry of Public Works. With the abdication of Bao Dai emperor in 1945, responsibility for conservation of the former capital as an historic site passed to the new government. Today, the Complex of Huế Monument is wholly owned by the Government of the Socialist Republic of Viet Nam. Guided by the 1972 Convention on the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, the National Heritage Law (2001, revised in 2009), and a number of other provincial regulations and decisions, the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, placed directly under the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee, is the institution responsible for the management of the complex and the protection of its outstanding universal value. Staffed by more than 700 people from many different professional backgrounds, this institution deals with all issues including zoning, research, tangible and intangible heritage preservation, traditional material reproduction, visitor management, as well as the planning and protection of the landscape setting and associated features in the buffer zone and immediately surrounding area.

The Complex of Huế Monuments is given special attention in the Socio-Economic Development Master Plan of Thừa Thiên Huế Province, which provides direction for the conservation and restoration of the complex through 2020. In addition, an Adjusted Planning Framework for the Complex of Huế Monuments (2010-2020) was approved by Prime Minister on 7 June 2010.

Re-zoning of the protected area is being considered in order to control increasing urbanization and development of infrastructure. Consideration is being given to the revision and extension of the boundaries of the inscribed sites, as well as the addition to the property of a number of other associated monuments and to the re nomination of the property as a cultural landscape, as recommended by the Advisory Body, ICOMOS.

Climate change and natural disasters are other potential problems for the long-term management of the property. To reduce the impact of recurrent floods, three dams are being constructed upstream along the Hương River. In addition the traditional water network and drainage system within and around the Citadel will be restored, as a means to reduce the vulnerability of the World Heritage property and its inhabitants to the risk of flood, and to reconstitute the integrity of the historic network of ponds and canals.

In addition to development, climate change and natural disasters are other potential problems for the long-term management of the property. To reduce the impact of recurrent floods, three dams are being constructed upstream along the Hương River. In addition the traditional water network and drainage system within and around the Citadel will be restored, as a means to reduce the vulnerability of the World Heritage property and its inhabitants to the risk of flood, and to reconstitute the historic network of ponds and canals.

In addition to the site's inscription in the UNESCO World Heritage List under the *critterion (iv)* as “an outstanding example of the Eastern feudal capital city”, the importance of the Complex of Huế Monuments is also evidenced in other outstanding values in terms of history, culture and feng-shui landscape such as:

Huế had been formed 700 years ago when two prefectures O-Ly officially belonged to the Dai Viet Empire in 1306 (after the wedding of Huyen Tran princess with the Cham king), concentrated and reached its apogees in 19<sup>th</sup> century. These values have been reflected in various aspects of Huế culture representing the outstanding values of the Complex of Huế Monuments as well as of the Eastern feudal capital city.

With 143 years existence in the role of a capital city under the Confucius-oriented monarchical regime and the role of a Buddhist centre, with the remaining splendid royal palaces and hundreds of pagodas in the beautiful surrounding landscape, Huế is not only an example of the traditional architectures but also the spiritual highlight and cultural centre in which the

Buddhism and Confucius mingle with the local cultural tradition embedding the distinctive ideology of religion, philosophy and ethics.

In the eyes of the Nguyễn emperors, the geographical location of Huế Imperial city was important not only for the favourable conditions of transportation and defense but also in geomantic principles in which the natural features were believed to strongly impact on the strength and duration of the dynasty. For these reasons, the important architectures of Huế capital city were well designed in line with the geomantic landscape, especially the factor of water (Perfume River/Hương River, ponds or streams, etc...), of mountains (such as Ngự Bình Mountain, Hến islet, Dã Viên islet, etc.) that have been praised in poetry or music. These symbolic features have made the unique significance of the Huế Complex of Monuments and become the attributes of the Outstanding Universal Value of the heritage property.

From the early beginning of the Nguyễn dynasty to its end, during the 19<sup>th</sup> – beginning of 20<sup>th</sup> century, the physical structures of the heritage property were preserved and protected by the Feudal Ministry of Construction, controlled and monitored by the regulations and laws of the dynasty, especially the overall planning in line with the geomantic principles that were decisive factor towards the selection of building's location and design. All these features bring the symbolic significance to the heritage property and the unity in its planning.

#### **1.4. Objectives of the Management Plan**

In order to protect the Outstanding Universal Value, the integrity and the authenticity of the Huế Complex of Monuments from the potential negative impacts, the Management Plan is set up under the following overall objectives:

- To protect the heritage property from the negative impacts of urban development, environment, tourism, illegal residence in the area of heritage that may affect the protection of the heritage's integrity, authenticity and the important attributes of the Outstanding Universal Value.

- To introduce, disseminate and promote the importance and values of the heritage property for the future sustainable development.



- To connect the heritage property and local community, enhance the local economic development minimizing the negative impacts on the values of the heritage property.

- To ensure the proper legal framework, administration and adequate financial mechanism for the achievement of the above objectives, the implementation of State and government orientation as well as the proposal of management policies.

In order to achieve these overall objectives, specific objectives were identified:

- To identify the threats and risks that may impact or decrease the Outstanding Universal Value, the integrity and the authenticity of the heritage property. Based on this assessment, it is necessary to propose the specific procedures for the heritage property.

- To build up the appropriate cooperative mechanism among relevant partners (including the local, national and international organizations) in the process of setting up the Management Plan incorporated with other local plans; to combine the above objectives to the local regulations and policies; to build up the instruction in local community to protect and promote the heritage's values.

- To ensure that the heritage values and the necessity of the Management Plan are understood in the community in order to upgrade the local people's responsibility and relevant authorities in the preservation and protection of the heritage property.

- To propose the essential scientific base for the Management Plan implementation and for the orientation of future plan in order to ensure that the management of the heritage property can adapt the demand of international conventions and national laws, simultaneously can contribute to the sustainable local socio-economic development.

- To identify the requirements of doing research and promoting the heritage values in the coming periods.

- To propose the monitoring indicators and effective mechanism for the heritage management.

## CHAPTER 2

### THE DESCRIPTION OF MONUMENT(S) AND THE ATTRIBUTES FORMING THE OUTSTANDING UNIVERSAL VALUE OF THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS

Presently, Huế still preserves a vast amount of Vietnamese tangible and intangible cultural heritage. During 400 years approximately (1558 – 1945), Huế was the political and cultural centre of Dang Trong (Inner Region), then the capital of the unified country. It has been supposed that the essence of the country during the centuries concentrated in Huế giving it its distinctive cultural characteristics.

Only during the period of the Nguyễn dynasty which last 143 years, there had been many diversified and aesthetic architectures of the royalty generated including fortification, palaces, temples or tombs, etc.

The location of Huế capital city was selected at the beginning of 19<sup>th</sup> century for the reasons recorded in the *Gazetteer of Đại Nam* (*Đại Nam Nhất Thống Chí*) by the National Historiographer's Office of Nguyễn dynasty as follows: “For the choice of Huế to found the Kingdom’s capital in the early part of XIX century, the Nguyễn Court observed as quoted in *Đại Nam Nhất Thống Chí* (Chronicle of Great unified Vietnam Kingdom): “*The Kingdom’s Capital (Huế) is the place in middle of the country from the North to the South, where upland and sea get together, land is high and dry, water is calm and tranquil; it has deep Thuận An and Tư Hiền estuaries blocking Hoàng Sơn mountain and Hải Vân pass by land; big river in front, high mountain in the background like a rolling dragon and sitting tiger. This solid topography, arranged by Heaven and Earth is the very appropriate capital the King wanted.*”<sup>1</sup>

With the strategic ideology and the geomantic (feng-shui) concept, the large-

---

<sup>1</sup> National Historiographer's Office of Nguyễn (1969), *Gazetteer of Đại Nam*, translated from the original version by the Institute of History, Khoa học Xã hội Publisher, Hà Nội, p. 11.

dimension construction of the capital city was started in the time of Gia Long emperor and completed under the reign of Minh Mạng emperor. In this planning, the natural conditions (rivers, sea, mountains, river mouths...) had its part in the lay-out of the capital amongst which the Hương river and Ngự Bình mountain (or the Royal Screen) as the two most important factors. In general, the architectural planning under the Nguyễn followed some Oriental philosophical principles of place selection and direction. For example, the relationship between cardinal points and colors on the one side and the five elements of the universe on the others was fixed as follows:

5 elements	Earth	Metal	Wood	Water	Fire
5 cardinal points	Centre	West	East	North	South
5 colours	Yellow	White	Blue	Black	Red

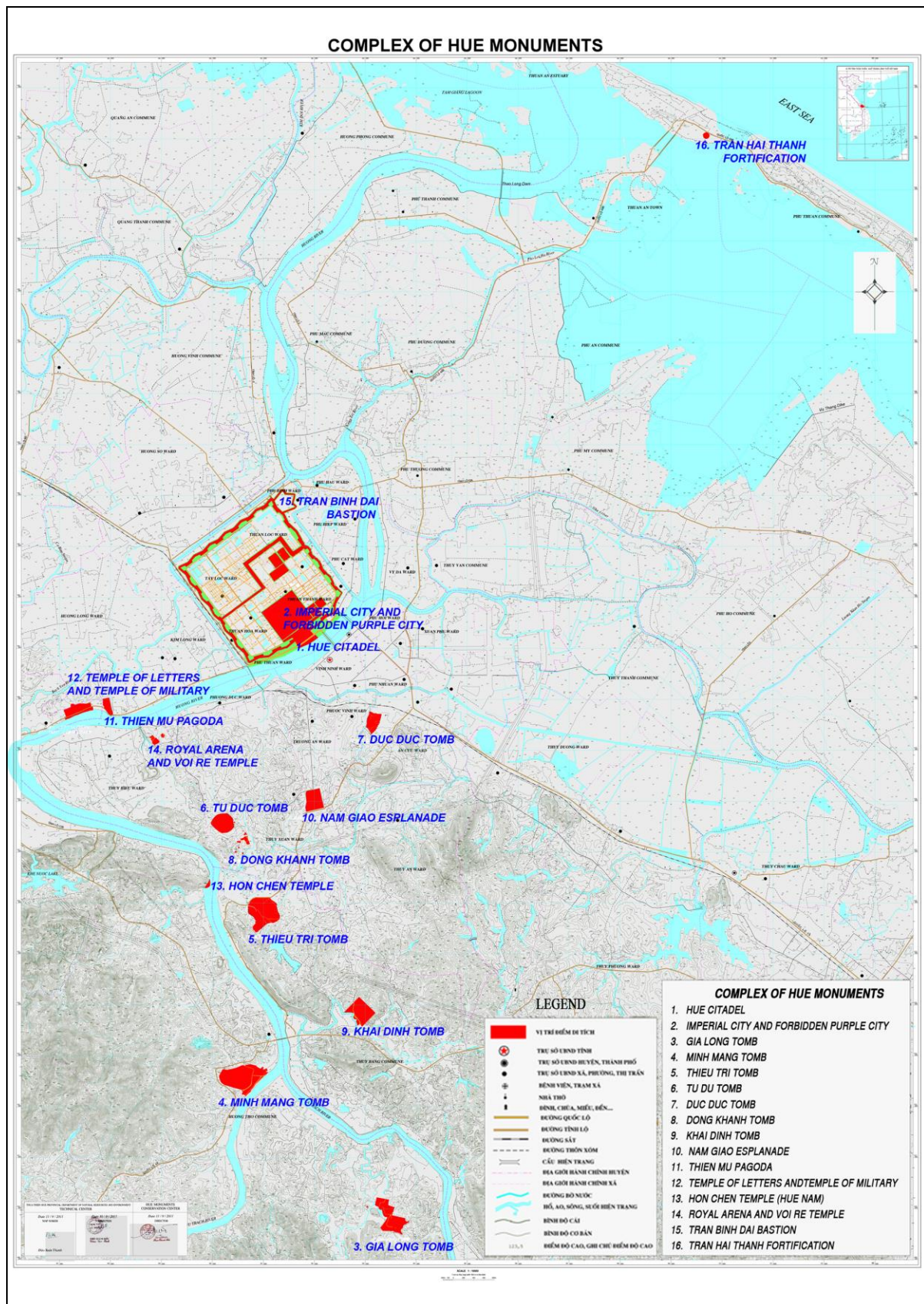
The principle of zoning and construction was based on the selection of the orientations in the relation with the Centre (the location of Forbidden City or the Emperor's palace in the Imperial City). This principle was clearly shown in a number of architectural monuments dated early nineteenth century, namely: Thanh Long/Blue Dragon Bridge (in the East), Bạch Hổ/White Tiger Bridge (in the West), and Huyền Yên Bridge (in the North).

The influence of the Oriental philosophy was also reflected in the selection of Huế capital city's direction. Accordingly, the axis of the capital's architectural complex always lies in North – South direction as in the concept “*The ruler faces the South to rule the nation*”. However, the axis of Huế City is not exactly in North – South, but turns out to be northwest – southeast, which is also propitious. This direction was chosen to adjust to some local natural elements in lines with geomantic conditions for the capital: Ngự Bình was “a screen”, the meander of the River of Perfumes in the front was “lighted house”, 2 islets on the river played the role of “blue dragon on the left” (Hến islet) and “white tiger on the right” (Dã Viên islet) to safeguard the Royal capital and the King's power.

Especially, the Hương River (Huong River) plays an important role in keeping balance and supplying water to the city, and in water transportation. Most of important constructions of the Nguyễn were built along the river's bank: the northern part with citadels, palaces and the court; the southern part covered by tranquil hills for temples, temples, pagodas and emperors' tombs.

Additionally, the mountain area surrounds the city, especially at the South, is well combined with the overall planning of the heritage property in line with the geomantic philosophy creating the distinctive landscape architectural features of this heritage property.

Apart from the fortification, palaces and tombs, the Complex of Huế Monuments also includes an abundant number of relics such as Nam Giao esplanade, Ho Quyen (royal arena) and Voi Re temple (dedicating to the meritorious elephants), Confucius temple, Huệ Nam (Hon Chén) shrine (dedicating to the Goddess and spirits), Thiên Mụ pagoda, and etc. All these relics are located along the river bank from the upstream to the downstream.



*Map: The location of monument(s) belonging to the Complex of Huế Monuments World Heritage property recognized in 1993 by UNESCO.*



## 2.1. Huế capital city (Huế Citadel)

During the period of Nguyễn Lords, Huế was chosen as the capital of Southern Vietnam (Đàng Trong) from 1687-1775, then it was the capital of Quang Trung Nguyễn Huệ king-Tây Sơn period from 1788 to 1801. Later, the Nguyễn emperors also selected Huế as the capital city of the united Vietnam from 1802 - 1945.

In terms of the geomancy, Huế capital city is located in a location seen as a “royal island” between the two watercourses of Hương river (in front) and Bạch Yến, Kim Long rivers (at the back). These rivers meet at the downstream. Hương river acts as the “ming-tang” (bright house) factor of Huế capital city. Two natural small islets namely Cồn Hến (on the left) and Cồn Dã Viên (on the right) in the river play the role of “left blue dragon” and “right white tiger” respectively protecting the capital city. Beyond the opposite river bank, there is a mountain called Bàng Sơn, later renamed Ngự Bình (Royal Mount) seen as the natural screen shielding the front side of capital city.



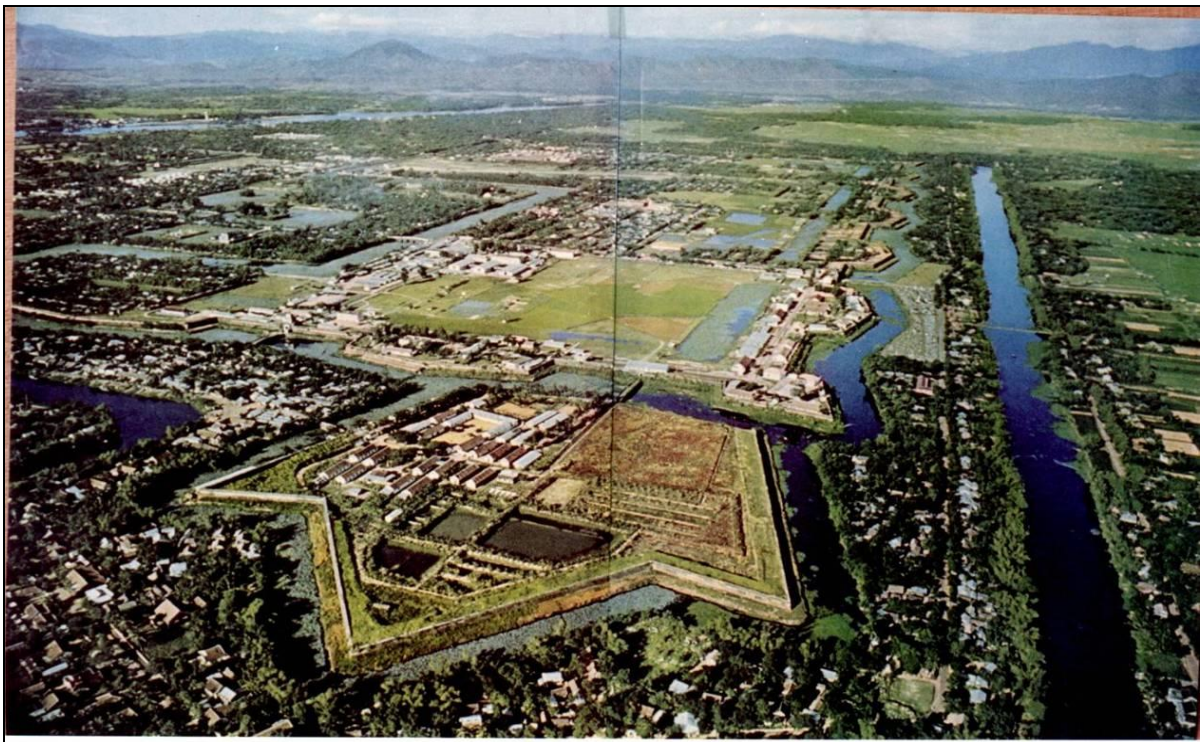
*Photo 3: Aerial photo of Hue Citadel*



Some essential constructions of the Citadel are as follow:

### ***2.1.1 Trần Bình Đài fortification***

Tran Binh Dai (the 25<sup>th</sup> post of Huế citadel) is located at the northeast corner of the citadel, separated by a common foss and also designed in the Vauban style with an approximately 1048 metre perimeter. The walls are 5.10 m high with brick layers, 15 m thick; berme 7,5 m wide, foss 32 m wide and 4,25m deep. Previously, there were three canon bases together with communion depots and watch towers. Trần Bình gate and Trường Định gate are two other entrances of Trần Bình Đài that open directly at the wall without watch-tower above.



*Picture 4: Aerial photo of Tran Binh Dai*

### ***2.1.2. The flag tower***

The Flag tower was built in 1807 in the middle of the front side of Capital City, consisting of a pedestal (17.5 m high) and flag post (37 m high).

### ***2.1.3. Quan Trượng Đài (The royal observatory)***

The royal observatory was built in 1836 on the bastion at the Southwest corner of the Citadel with the height of 12 m. Originally, there was an octagonal gazebo



(restored recently) where was the headquarters of a department specialized in astronomy, weather forecast and calendar making.

- The external defensive system includes:

**2.1.4. Berm:** *The strip of land from the wall foot to the inner bank of the moats, 8,5m wide.*

**2.1.5. Moat:** *50m wide, 4m deep.*

**2.1.6. Glacis:** *the strip of land from the outer bank of the moat outwards average 120m wide.*

#### **2.1.7. Protective rivers**

Some architectural structures on the front side of Capital City.

**2.1.8. Phu Văn Lâu (pavilion):** *exactly in front of Kỳ Đài on the main axis of the Capital City was the place where the King's proclamations and ordinances and also the list of would be Doctorate-holders were posted up.*

**2.1.9. Nghinh Lương Đình:** *in front of Phu Văn Lâu, close to the Hương river was the emperor's summer house on the riverside.*

**2.1.10. Thương Bạc Đình:** *built in 1875 right in front of the Southeast Gate, close to Hương River. This pretty house was the only remains of the Foreign Office of the Court.*

Some architectures within the capital city: Throughout the citadel, there are hundreds of royal architectural structures designed for working, dwelling or worshipping.

#### **2.1.11. The Six Ministries:**

Built in 1827, it accomodated officies of Ministry of the Interior, Ministry of Finances, Ministry of Rites, Ministry of War, Ministry of Justice and Ministry of Civil Affairs. Under the reign of Thành Thái emperor, the building of Ministry of Education was constructed. After many wars and due to the urban development after 1945, nothing of this complex left except for the ruins of the Interior Ministry and the Civil Affairs Ministry, a part of the gate and wall of the Education Ministry, and the Royal Forecast office (Khâm Thiên Giám). The remaining places became the residential area of new buildings.

#### ***2.1.12. The High Security Council:***

Built in 1899, the building's function had been changed many times in different political contexts. It is presently the main office of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

#### ***2.1.13. The National College:***

It was founded in 1821 in another place as the national college under the Nguyễn and moved to the present location in 1908.

#### ***2.1.14. The Long An royal palace:***

Long An royal palace has a complicated history in terms of location, function and naming. It was built in 1845 in another place, moved to the present place in 1909 to be the library and became the museum where stores thousands of the Nguyễn's objects. In despite of function and naming changes, it still remains the original form as the most aesthetic valuable royal architecture of Vietnam at present.

#### ***2.1.15. The Royal Family's Affairs Department (ruin)***

The Office of Royal Family's Affairs was created to manage all the Royal Family Affairs.

#### ***2.1.16. The National Historiographers' Office (ruin)***

The National Historiographers' Office was the place where historiographers of the Nguyễn Dynasty worked until 1945.

#### ***2.1.17. The Royal Library in the middle of Hộc Hải lake***

It was built in 1825 as the place to archive millions of pages of land registers, administrative documents of Ministries under the Nguyễn Dynasty.

#### ***2.1.18. Tinh Tâm lake***

It was created under the reign of King Gia Long and perfected under King Ming Mang as the royal garden with a dozen graceful buildings for the kings to come and rest.

#### ***2.1.19. The Xã Tắc esplanade***

This open 2-storeyed platform was built in 1806 as for the annual agricultural worship of the God of Earth and the God of Rice. By the order of

the Gia Long emperor, every province had carried there 50 boatfuls of solid and clean soil to heap on the esplanade. It became ruined in 20<sup>th</sup> century wartime and was restored in 2008.

## **2.2. Đại Nội (the Imperial City, Forbidden Purple City and Palaces)**

The overall planning of Đại Nội took place in 1803. In 1804, Hoàng Thành (the Imperial City) and Cung Thành (Palace city, inside the Imperial City) were built. In 1822, under the reign of Minh Mạng emperor (1820-1945), Cung Thành was renamed Tử Cấm Thành (the Forbidden Purple City). Some palaces and royal ancestral temples of the Nguyễn were also built in the same year 1804 in Đại Nội. In 1833, Minh Mạng emperor had it re-designed, upgraded and completed.

The planning of Đại Nội is in rectangular (640m x 568m) with the area of 36,3 ha. The surrounding wall was built of brick (4m high, 1m thick). Outside of the wall is the system of the protective moat called Kim Thủy Hồ. Each side of the wall has an entrance, including the Ngọ Môn gate (South), Hòa Bình gate (north), Hiển Nhơn gate (east) and Chương Đức gate (west). There are 10 stone bridges across the moat to connect to the outside.

The planning of Đại Nội is divided into many different walled zones with the different functions. Main zones are as follows:

- Zone from the Southern Gate to Thái Hòa palace (Palace of Supreme Harmony): the zone for great ceremonies, such as the coronation, the King's birthday, the new year celebration, the parade, the grand audiences twice a month, etc.

- Zone for ancestral royal temples, including Triệu Miếu, Thái Miếu, Thế Miếu, Phụng Tiên (ruin) where worship the ancestors of the Nguyễn. In this zone, there are around 30 subordinated buildings apart from 5 main temples.

- Zone of Diên Thọ and Trường Sanh residential building complexes: each of complex has one main construction in the middle and more than 10 subordinated buildings at the surroundings. This zone was for the Queen Mother and Grandmother.

- Zone of Phủ Nội Vụ (interior affairs): comprising storehouses keeping valuables, handicraft workshop.

- Zone of Cơ Hạ Garden and Khâm Văn Palace: the playground, learning place for young princes.

*Forbidden Purple City*: the most important zone among the remaining areas residential areas. The Forbidden Purple City has an almost square plan with each side is of more or less 300 m in length. The encircling walls are made of bricks, 3.5 m high to separate the private area of the emperor and royal family from outside. Within this area, there were nearly 50 splendid constructions of different dimensions. There are 7 entrances, the front side has only one entrance namely Đại Cung Môn (main gate of the Forbidden Purple City) reserved for the Emperor's use. In this area, many buildings were constructed for the emperor and royal family.

In general planning, during 13 reigns from Gia Long emperor to Bảo Đại emperor (1802-1945), royal buildings in the Imperial City were more or less renovated, changed of the location or decoration but they still remain the original scope and key features as of follows:

- The site plan of structures is very symmetrical. Most of buildings were symmetrically built in pairs along the main axis and the unified order of the location in front and at the back, the left and right, etc, The reflection of numbers five and nine, which relate closely to the emperor's position in the Confucius concept, can be seen at many places in the architecture.

- The location of five ancestral temples at the important places within the area of Imperial City shows clearly the specific feature of the Nguyễn in their ancestral cult practice.

- On the aspect of fine arts, the royal palaces of Huế reflect their own characteristics. They are mostly wooden buildings in the form of double house (so-called “double house, double foundation” style). The interior and exterior decoration are diversified with the alternate arrangement of well-carved flowery patterns and Chinese characters. The technique of wooden carving or engraving,

**D. ĐOẠN THỊ ĐIỂM**

**MẶT BẰNG TỔNG THỂ ĐẠI NỘI - HUẾ**

**GHI CHÚ:**

— — — — — CÔNG TRÌNH CỎN

- - - - - CÔNG TRÌNH MẶT

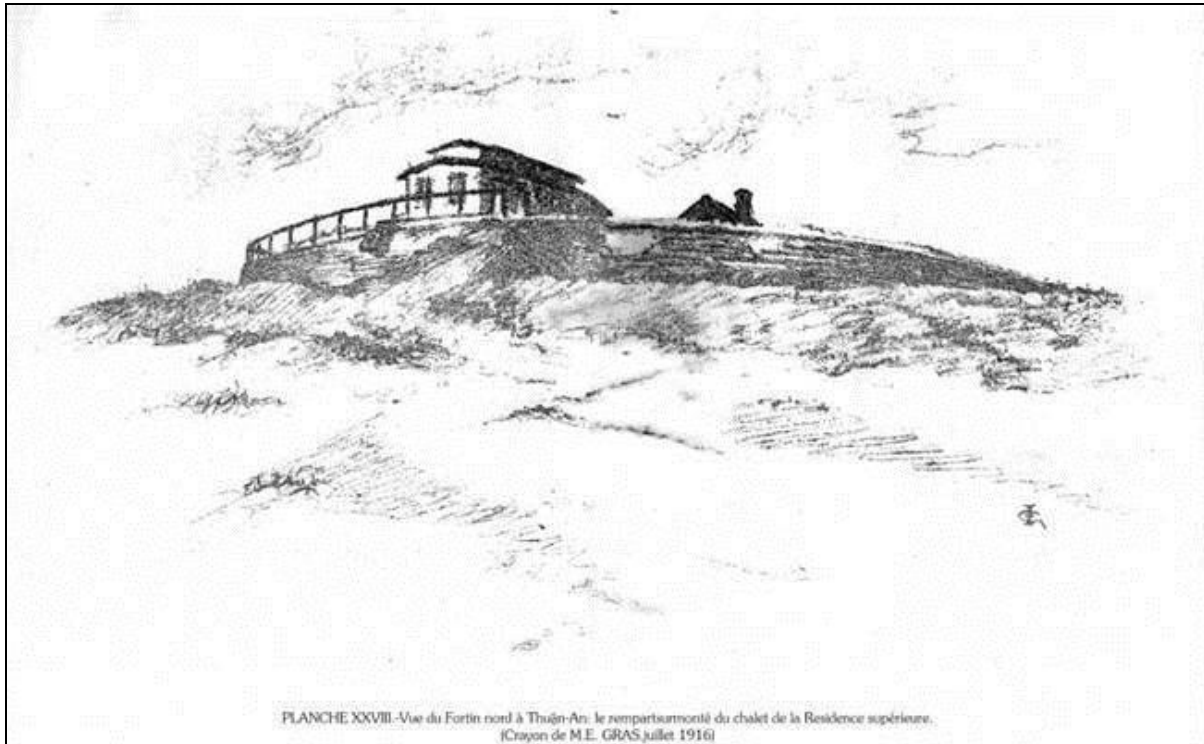
0 50 100 300m

**D. ĐOẠN THỊ ĐIỂM**

43

### 2.3. Trấn Hải Thành fortification

Tran Hai Thanh is situated on old-time Thuận An River mouth, 10 kilometres by water north-east of the Capital City (Citadel). This place was built in 1813 and was a strategically important gateway to the sea. In 1814, this post was renamed by Emperor Minh Mạng as Trấn Hải Thành. (For more information, please refer to the nomination dossier in 1993).



*Photo 5: Trấn Hải Thành*

### 2.4. Văn Miếu, Võ Miếu

#### 2.4.1. Văn Miếu (Temple of Literature)

Văn Miếu was officially built in 1808 as the temple dedicating to Confucius (551 - 478 B.C) and other well known Chinese and Vietnamese confucians. During the Nguyen Dynasty, the worshipping ceremonies were solemnly carried on twice a year, in the spring and autumn.



*Photo 6: Văn Miếu Huế*

Văn Miếu which locates in the northern side of Hương River and of 4.5 kilometres away from the Imperial City, also faces South. The property covers an almost square area with each side is about 160 metres and surrounded by a wall of two metres high.. The area of Văn Miếu includes several buildings of different sizes spreading on an area of three hectares. Among which there are 32 stone steles of doctors and 4 other steles. Originally, this area has 20 buildings including the main temple to worship Confucius and his renowned disciples, two subordinate buildings on the left and right to worship other well-known Confucius 72 intellectuals, the kitchen, storehouse, and other related buildings.

Most valuables are 32 steles on which are inscribed the names of 293 people who earned the Doctorate of Literature in the 39 examinations held during the Nguyễn Dynasty in the period from 1822 to 1919. Many of them became distinguished figures in the history and literature of Vietnam. This kind of original document shows specific details about the art of carving, writing and the history of examinations under the Nguyễn Dynasty.



The stone steles are erected on the stone tortoises. All of them were made of blue stone (from Thanh Hoa) or marble stone.

The constructions of Van Mieu were either destroyed or seriously deteriorated.

#### ***2.4.2. Võ Miếu***

*Võ Miếu* (Temple of Military) is the temple of the most famous Chinese and Vietnamese military Generals. It was built in 1835-1836 with four wooden buildings (including the main temple, the left and right houses and a building for kitchen) and some other subordinate structures, surrounded by a wall with two sided exits.. Its main gate was a roofed wooden building.

In its yard there are three large stone steles erected in 1839 on which the names, places of birth of ten resounding Generals during the reign of Emperor Gia Long (1802-1819) and Minh Mạng (1820-1840) as good examples for the successive generations. There are two other stone steles dated the reign of Tự Đức emperor (1848-1883) on the yard. Under the Nguyễn Dynasty, worshipping ceremonies were organized twice a year in spring and autumn.

Võ Miếu is among the architectural and cultural components of the Nguyễn in Huế capital city. After nearly 180 years from its beginning, under the impacts of nature and wars, this temple is in ruin at present.

The Temple of Military is a unique monument of the Nguyễn Dynasty that reflects the contemporary Vietnamese sportsmanship.



*Photo 7: Steles in the Temple of Military*

## **2.5. Nam Giao Esplanade**

Nam Giao esplanade of the Nguyễn dynasty is the only feudal esplanade which remains almost original settings in Viet Nam. The first esplanade of the Nguyen Dynasty was constructed in 1803 in the reign of Gia Long and located at An Ninh village. In 1806, it was relocated to the south of the Citadel where presently belongs to Trường An ward and Thủy Xuân ward, Huế City. The esplanade was designed with three terraces interbuilt on one another, symbolizing three agents: heaven, earth and humans, surrounded by a pine forest.



*Photo 8: Nam Giao esplanade*

The topmost terrace which was called “Viên Đàn” and is of the round shape symbolizes the Heaven. Its surrounding parapet was painted blue. This is followed by a lower square terrace which was called “Phương Đàn” and symbolizes the Earth. The surrounding parapet of the second terrace was painted yellow.

The lowest terrace which also has a square shape with the surrounding parapet was painted red, symbolizes Humans.

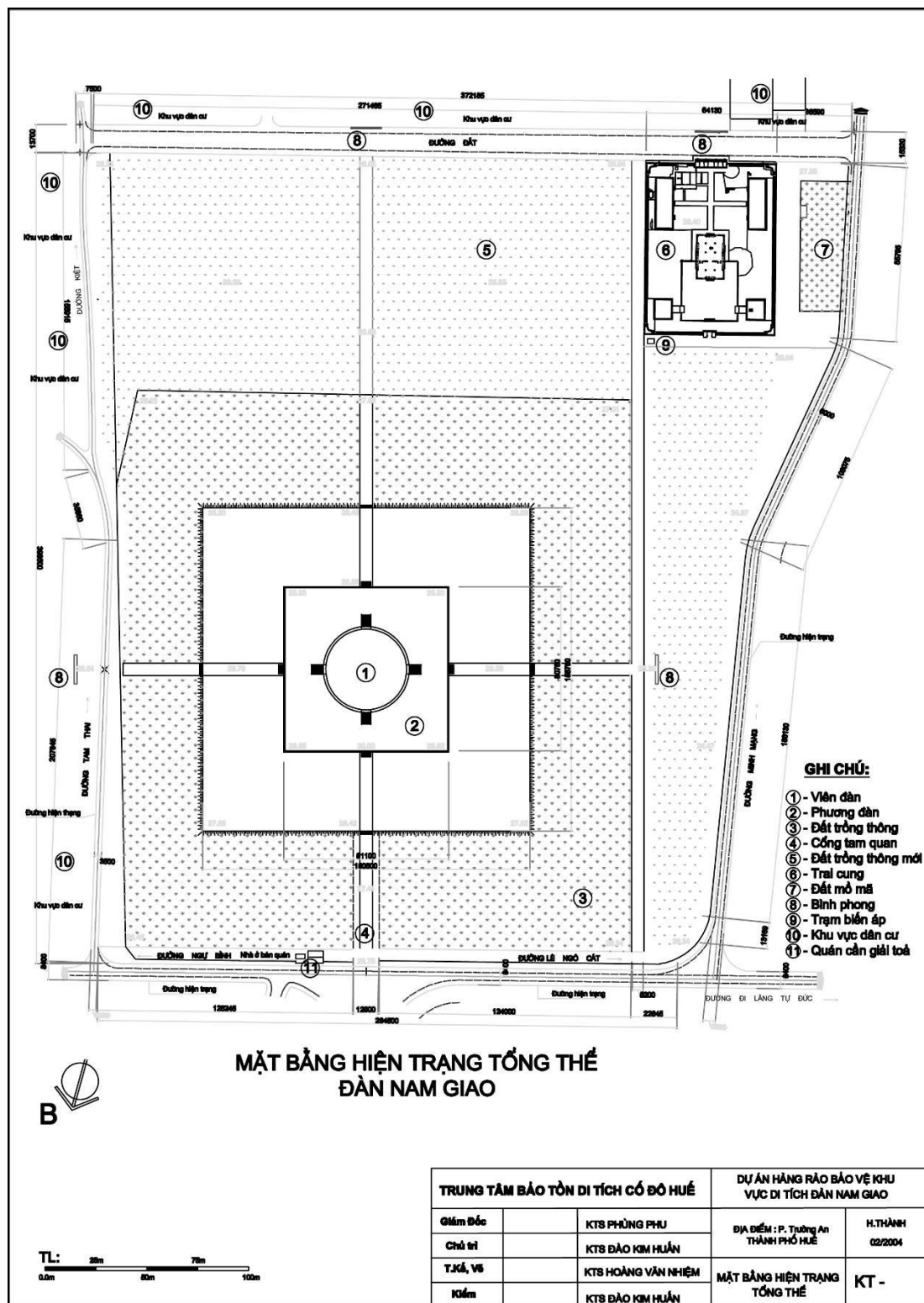
All three terraces had doors and steps at four sides: East, West, South and North.

Around these three terraces, there were structures such as "Trai Cung" (Fasting Palace) where the Emperors came for a vegetarian diet and to rest some days prior to starting the offering ceremony, "Thần Trù" (Divine Kitchen) – the place to prepare animals for offering, "Thần Khố" (Divine Store) - the place to store things for offering, and many other substructures.

The first offering ceremony under Nguyễn dynasty was held in 1807 and since then, it was held annually in the spring until Thành Thái reign in 1907, for realizing that the ceremony was too costly, he ordered to hold it every three years.

The last offering ceremony at Nam Giao Esplanade of Vietnam monarchy was held under Bao Dai times. It was at midnight and dawn of the March 23, 1945 - 5 months prior to the monarchy's collapse.

Nowadays, Nam Giao is one of important historic monuments of Nguyễn dynasty.



Map of Nam Giao esplanade



## 2.6. Hồ Quyền (Tiger Arena)

Hồ Quyền, is the unique monument among the Huế Complex of monuments, located at Thủy Biều ward, Huế city. It is in fact a construction for the tiger cage with the function of arena for the fight between elephants and tigers. It was built in the 11<sup>th</sup> year of Minh Mang's reign (1830).

The construction of Hồ Quyền was in shape of a concentric enclosure, the emperor seat faced south. Five tiger cages with longitudinal wooden doors were located on the pitch in front of the emperor's sets.

Under the Nguyen Dynasty, the mortal combat between elephant and tiger were annually held once a year. Nguyễn emperors were organizers, operators and also the enthusiastic audiences who encouraged the fight until the time elephant defeated the tiger. The last fight was organize in 1904 in the reign of Thành Thái emperor.

Hồ Quyền is not only a unique structure in the Complex of Huế Monuments of Vietnam but also a rare architectural monument in the world.



*Photo 9 : Hồ Quyền (Tiger Arena)*

### **2.7. Voi Ré (Long Châu or Elephant Roaring) temple**

Located 200 metres west from the royal arena, Voi Ré (Long Châu) temple was erected by the mahouts in 1817 on a low hill in a beautiful landscape in order to worship 15 Spirits who were believed that they could protect the elephants in the battles as well as in daily life. Later, under the reign of Emperor Minh Mạng, an elephant that had been wounded in the battlefield tried to reach the temple and made its last roar before dying. Because of this story, the temple has been given the popular name Voi Ré (elephant-roar temple) ever since.

The Voi Ré temple and Hồ Quyền arena reflect the exclusive characteristics of the Nguyễn's culture and enrich the cultural heritage of Huế region.



*Photo 10: Voi Ré (Elephant Roaring) temple*

### **2.8. Huệ Nam (Hòn Chén) shrine**

Huệ Nam shrine is a religious and historical relic belonging to the complex of Huế monuments, located at Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà village. With high values of history and culture, this shrine dedicates to Thiên Y A Na goddess and other female demigods, a popular belief in Vietnam that has



been practiced for centuries. (For more information, please refer to the nomination dossier in 1993)



*Photo 11: Landscape of Huệ Nam Shrine*

## **2.9. Thiên Mụ pagoda**

Located beside the picturesque Hương River, Thiên Mụ Pagoda, with its ancient architecture and beautiful natural setting, is the oldest pagoda in Huế built in 1601. Through many re-constructions and restorations Thiên Mụ Pagoda still retains valuable architectural structures such as Phước Duyên Tower, Đại Hùng temple, the stone steles and bronze bells. With the beautiful architectures and landscape, Thiên Mụ pagoda is among the most famous pagodas in Vietnam. (For more information, please refer to the nomination dossier in 1993)





*Photo 12: Aerial photo of Thiên Mụ pagoda*

#### **2.10. Gia Long tomb (Thiên Thọ tomb)**

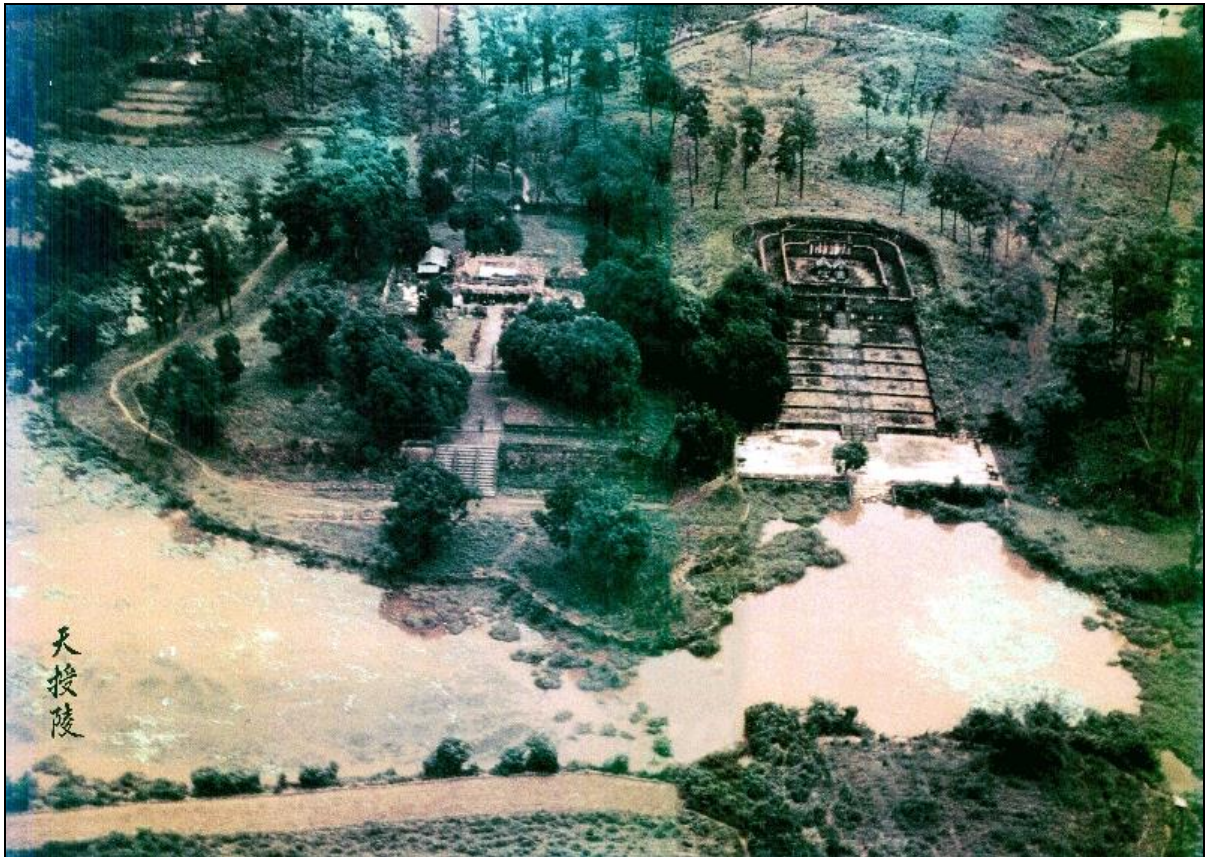
The tomb of Emperor Gia Long is a complex of several royal tombs including the tomb of his mother, the tomb of himself and his wives and tombs of other royal family's members. This complex was mainly built during almost



two centuries (from the 17<sup>th</sup>-18<sup>th</sup> centuries). All of them were planned in a magnificent area from the root of Trường Sơn Mountain to the Tả Trạch-a tributary of Hương River. This complex was surrounded by mountains and hills; each of them was named by the Emperor. The Great Thiên Thọ Mountain was considered the natural screen of the tomb and all the mountain complex were named Thiên Thọ Mountain.

It can be said that the tomb of Emperor Gia Long is a marvellous combination between the landscape and architectures in which the natural settings bring the magnificence to the property.

(For more information, please refer to the nomination dossier in 1993)



*Photo 13: Aerial photo of Gia Long tomb*

### **2.11. Minh Mạng tomb (Hiếu tomb)**

The tomb is of 12 km to the west of Huế City centre by road and 16 km by the waterway. It took 14 years for the emperor to find out this location. The construction was started almost one year before the emperor's death and continued for more three years until the completion (1840-1843).

The creativity and talent of the people in those dates transformed a wild area of forest and mountain into a complex of architectures in solemnity and splendor, natural harmony with an in-depth philosophy.

Within an area surrounded by a 1,750 metre-long wall, this complex was organized along the axis from the main gate to the emperor's grave. There were three parallel axes in which the holy axis was the centre line. The principal pavilions were built symmetrically along this main line.

The tomb of Emperor Minh Mạng is a masterpiece of landscape architecture in which the solemnity and symmetry were combined with the poetic nature to create the place of art, poetry and philosophy.



*Photo 14: Aerial photo of Minh Mạng tomb*

## **2.12. Thiệu Trị tomb (Xương tomb)**

The tomb of Emperor Thiệu Trị is located in a good place of Cư Chánh village at a distance of 8 km from the Citadel. The tomb was constructed within a period of less 10 months since its start on February 11, 1848.

Whilst the Minh Mạng tomb had been designed in the only axis, , the tomb of Thiệu Trị emperor was built in two areas at a distance of 50 metres



apart, the tomb area situates on the right and the temple area situates on the left. Most of the monuments are similar to those of Minh Mạng tomb. Without a surrounding wall, this complex looks unobstructed.

In the Complex of Huế Monuments, the tomb of Emperor Thiệu Trị has a unique value of both architecture and landscape that reflects the tranquility and elegance, modesty but meticulousity.

In the surrounding area, there are also some royal tombs including Hieu Dong tomb of the emperor's mother, Xương Thọ tomb of his queen and a cemetery of his small children.



*Photo 15: Aerial photo of Thiệu Trị Tomb*

### **2.13. Tự Đức tomb (Khiêm tomb)**

Located 7 km southwest from the city, this royal tomb is composed of individual monuments which were built at different heights but interconnected in a unified planning by the steps and access. There is a theatre, a small zoo for deers and a 20-ton blue stone stele carved with a 9,935- character poem composed by the emperor himself. This stele was recognized in the Guinness Book of Vietnam for the record of the tallest and heaviest stone stele.

All of constructions were named after “Khiêm” (modesty) character.

The key buildings were constructed within three years (1864-1867) but the constructions were continued after his death until 1902.

Within the area of this tomb, there are also the tomb of Emperor Kiến Phúc, built in 1884, and the tomb of Tự Đức's queen, built in 1902.

With the poetic scenery, Tự Đức tomb is a masterpiece of landscape architecture that the Nguyễn dynasty left for the next generation.



*Photo 16: Aerial photo of Tự Đức Tomb*

#### **2.14. Dục Đức (An Lăng) tomb**

Emperor Dục Đức was one of three adopted sons of the Emperor Tự Đức. He was enthroned in 1883 after the death of the Emperor Tự Đức but dethroned after three days and passed away in the jail.

The tomb of Emperor Dục Đức was built later, in 1899, by the Dục Đức's son who was crowned as Emperor Thành Thái. Later, Thanh Thai was also dethroned in 1907 and died in 1954. The successor, Emperor Duy Tân, was the son of Thanh Thai and also dethroned in 1916. Relics of Thành Thái and Duy Tân were brought back to Huế later and also buried in the area of this tomb. In addition, nearly 150 tombs of their family members were also located in this area.



The complex of Dục Đức tomb was built in the difficult historic periods of Viet Nam with complicated contexts. All three emperors died when they were not enthroned and their tombs did not follow the royal regulations of the emperor's tomb. There is a lack of two rows of the stone statues of mandarins or animals in the front court as well as a lack of the stone stele of the emperor's biography. However, the complex still fully reflects the feng-shui features with the unique historical, architectural and artistic values.. Both temple and the tombs had the surrounding walls, taking the Phước Quả hill in front of the main building as the front natural screen; the stream in front of the temple as “ming-tang” (house of the brightness) and the backside mount Tam Thai as the natural “pillow” element.

Dục Đức tomb marks an eventful historical period of the Nguyễn Dynasty and enriches the royal tomb compound in Huế.



*Photo 17: Dục Đức Tomb*

### **2.15. Đồng Khánh (Tur Lăng) tomb**

Emperor Đồng Khánh was crowned in 1886 and breathed his last only 3 years later in 1889 at the age of 25.

The structures of the tomb were simply planned in two areas at 50 metres apart, the grave of Emperor Dục Đức was on the right side and the temple was on the left side. Each area has around 10 element buildings.

The Ngung Hy temple which was dedicated to the cult of Đồng Khánh and his two queens was built under the reign of Khai Dinh and has been the monument of greatest value of art. Most noteworthy are the building materials and decoration. Aside from the elaborate exterior decoration, the interior is lacquered red gilded and richly adorned. It is the best conserved and most splendid monument of Huế.

As a whole, Đồng Khánh Tomb is pretty, delicate in its countryside setting and bears to some extent the cross-cultural marks of European and Asian civilizations in late 19th-early 20th centuries. This feature will be developed at its peak in Khải Định tomb.



*Photo 18: Đồng Khánh Tomb*

### **2.16. Khải Định (Ứng Lăng) tomb**

Being built from 1920 to 1931, Khải Định tomb is 10 km far from the city. This is the last royal tomb of the Nguyễn. During 9 years (1916-1925) in the



reign of Khải Định emperor, the Western culture vigorously infiltrated into Vietnam. Khải Định himself made a tour to France in 1922. As a result, in his tomb, several elements of the western architecture have been intermingled with the nation's traditional art, particularly the use of concrete in place of wood, slates for roofing, iron gates, lightning rods, electric lamps, etc.

Mountains, hills and rivulets round the tomb are exploited to fulfill the geomantic requirements thus offer the tomb a majestic environment. Unique value of art of the tomb lies with the decoration skill obviously seen in the Thiên Định Palace. Its interior decoration features colourful mosaics made of millions of ceramic chip. With diligence and expert hands, artisans of Khải Định times have created hundreds of mosaic bas-relief, all elaborate and attractive with graphic designs and arabesques despite the hardness of the materials.

Khải Định tomb is classified as a work of “neo-classic” architecture that represents the combination between the Vietnamese tradition and Western architecture, and the interminglement of Asian-European cultures in Vietnamese society at the beginning of 20<sup>th</sup> century.



*Photo 19: Khải Định Tomb*



# **CHAPTER 3**

## **LEGAL FRAMEWORK, CONCERNED REGULATIONS AND ARTICLES IN THE MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION OF THE HUẾ COMPLEX OF MONUMENTS**

### **3.1. International documents**

#### **3.1.1. Legal documents**

- International Culture Tourism Charter (Mexico, 10/1999).
- The Convention for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention) (Paris, 1972). Vietnam ratified the Convention in 1987. It is a legal document. The Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention are revised from time to time, the latest revision being in 2013.
- Decision of the 17<sup>th</sup> session of the World Heritage recognized the Complex of Huế Monuments as the World Cultural Heritage in 1993.

#### **3.1.2. Others documents**

- The Venice Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of the Monuments and Sites (1964).
- The Burra Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Significance (1979), built from the International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites of the Venice Charter (1964) and decisions of the Vth ICOMOS General Assembly in Moscow, 1978. Other charters were approved on 23-2-1981, 23-4-1988 and 26-11-1999.
- The Florence Charter for the Conservation of the Historic Gardens (1981).
- The Washington Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban areas (1984)
- The Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban areas (The Washington Charter, 1987).
- The Charter for the Protection and Management of the Archaeological heritage, 1990.

- Nara Document on Authenticity (1994).
- Principles for the Recording of Monuments, Groups of Buildings and Sites (Sofia, 1996).
- Principles for the Preservation of Historic Timber Structures (Mexico, 1999).

### **3.2. Legal documents at the national level**

At the national level, the complex of Huế monuments is protected by Vietnam legal system, including:

- Law on Cultural Heritage No. 28/2001/QH10 dated June 29, 2001 and Law on amendment and supplement of Law on Cultural Heritage (No. 32/2009/QH12 dated June 18, 2009. Decree No. 98/2010/NĐ-CP dated September 21, 2010 of the Government that set the detailed regulations to implement the Law on Culture Heritage and Law on amendment and supplement of Law on Cultural Heritage.

- Law on fire prevention and fighting No. 27/2001/QH10 dated June 29, 2001 and Law on amendment and supplement of Law on fire prevention and fighting No. 40/2013/QH13 dated November 22, 2013. Decree No. 79/2014/NĐ-CP dated July 31, 2014 by the Government that set the detail implement of Law on fire prevention and fighting, Law on amendment and supplement of Law on fire prevention and fighting.

- Law on Forest protection and development No. 29/20214/QH11 dated December 03, 2004. Decree No. 23/2006/NĐ-CP dated March 03, 2006 of the government about the implementation of the Law on Forest protection and development.

- Law on environmental protecting No. 55/2014/QH13 dated June 23, 2014. Decree No.179/2013/NĐ-CP dated November 14, 2013 by the government about the punishment on the administrative violation in the environment protection domain; Decree No. 35/2014/NĐ-CP dated April 29, 2014 by the government on the amendment and supplement articles of decree No. 29/2011/NĐ-CP dated April 18, 2011 by the government that regulate about

the environmental strategy evaluation, environmental effect evaluation and environmental protection engagement.

- Law on Natural Disaster Prevention and Control No. 33/2013/QH13 dated June 19, 2013. Decree No. 66/2014/NĐ-CP dated July 4, 2014 by the government on the detailed regulations and direction to implement the articles of Law on Natural Disaster Prevention and Control.

- Law on Tourism No. 44/2005/QH11 dated June 14, 2005. Decree No. 92/2007/ NĐ-CP dated June 1, 2007 by the government regulated the detail articles of Law on Tourism. Decree No. 180/2013/NĐ-CP dated November 14, 2013 by the government on the amendment and supplement the articles of Decree No. 92/2007/NĐ-CP dated June 1, 2007

- The Law on Housing No. 56/2005/QH11 dated November 29, 2005. Decree No. 71/2010/NĐ-CP dated June 23, 2010 by the government on the detailed regulations and guidance to implement the Law on Housing.

- Law on Residence No. 81/2006/QH11 dated November 29, 2006 and the Law on the amendment and supplement of the articles of Law on Residence No. 36/2013/QH13 dated June 20, 2013. Decree No. 31/2014/NĐ-CP dated April 18, 2014 by the government on the detailed regulations on some articles and measurement to implement the Law on Residence.

- Law on Biological Diversity No. 20/2008/QH12 dated November 13, 2008. Decree No. 65/2010/NĐ-CP dated June 11, 2010 by the government on the detailed regulations and instruction to implement the articles of Law on Biological Diversity.

- Law on Mineral Resources No. 60/2010/QH12 dated November 17, 2010. Decree No. 15/2012/ NĐ-CP dated March 9, 2012 by the government on the detailed regulations and instruction to implement the articles of Law on Mineral Resources.

- Law on Land No. 45/2013/QH13 dated November 29, 2013. Decree No. 43/2014/NĐ-CP dated May 15, 2014 by the government on the detailed regulations and instruction to implement the articles of Law on Land.

- Decree No. 39/2007/NĐ-CP dated March 16, 2007 by the government about the personal permanent independent trading without business registration.

- Decree No. 12/2009/NĐ-CP dated February 12, 2009 by the government on the management of the invested building projects

- Decree No. 103/2009/NĐ-CP dated November 6, 2009 by the government on the regulations of cultural activities and service business on public culture.

- Decree No.112/2009/NĐ-CP dated December 14, 2009 by the government on the management of the cost of building investment.

- Decree No. 70/2012/NĐ-CP dated September 18, 2012 by the government regulated the jurisdiction, order, procedure for setting up and approval of the planning or project of maintenance, preservation and restoration of the historical – cultural monuments, beautiful landscape.

- Decree No. 15/2013/NĐ-CP dated February, 2013 by the government on the management of the quality of construction.

- Decree No. 157/2013/NĐ-CP dated November 11, 2013 by the government on the punishment of administrative violation in the forest management, forest development, forest protection and management forest resources.

- Decree No. 158/2013/NĐ-CP dated November 12, 2013 by the government on the punishment of administrative violation in the field of culture, sports, tourism and advertisement.

- Decision No. 1706/2001/QĐ-BVHTT dated July 24, 2001 by the Ministry of Culture and Information (present day Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism) on approval of the General plan for the conservation and promotion of historical – cultural monuments and beautiful landscape's value until 2020.

- Decision No. 02/2003/QĐ-BTNMT dated July 29, 2003 by the Ministry of Resources and Environment on the regulation of environment protection in the field of tourism.

- Decision No. 148/2004/QĐ-TTg dated August 13, 2004 by the Prime Minister on the principal direction in the socio-economic development of the Central major economic area to 2010 and the vision until 2020.

- Decision No. 156/2005/QĐ-TTg dated June 23, 2005 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the general plan for the Vietnam museum system until 2020.

- Decision No. 209/2005/QĐ-TTg dated August 24, 2005 by the Prime Minister recognizing Huế city as the urban level I belonging to Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- Decision No. 143/2007/QĐ-TTg dated August 30, 2007 by the Prime Minister on the plan of building up Huế city as the Festival city.

- Decision No. 172/2007/QĐ-TTg dated November 16, 2007 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the strategy for prevention, response and reduction of the natural disaster until 2020.

- Decision No. 11/2008/QĐ-TTg dated January 16, 2008 by the Prime Minister on some specific mechanism, policy of the socio-economic management and the development for Huế city (level I urban city) directly belonging to Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- Decision No. 1085/QĐ-TTg dated August 12, 2008 by the Prime Minister on approval of the plan to develop the Central major economic area (the Central major economic area – the middle of the Central)

- Decision No. 86/2008/QĐ-BVHTTDL dated December 30, 2008 by the Cultural, Sports and Tourism Minister on the Regulations for the archaeological survey and excavation.

- Decision 445/QĐ-TTg dated April 07, 2009 by the Prime Minister on the revision of Master Plan for the development of urban system in Vietnam to 2025 and vision to 2050.

- Decision 86/2009/QĐ-TTg dated June 17, 2009 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the general plan for socio-economic development of Thừa Thiên Huế province until 2020.

- Decision No. 597/QĐ-TTg dated April 16, 2013 by the Prime Minister on the revision the master plan of Huế city until 2030, vision to 2050.

- Instruction No. 18/CT-BVHTTDL dated February 06, 2012 by the Culture, Sports and Tourism Minister on the implementation of “Strategy for the development of Vietnam tourism until 2020, vision to 2030”

- Circular No. 70/2007/TT-BNN dated August 01, 2007 by the Agriculture and Rural Development Minister on the instruction for building up and implementing the village community agreement on the forest protection and development

- The Joint Circular No.104/2007/TTLT/BTC-BVHTTDL dated August 30, 2007 by the Finance Minister on the instruction of payment and level of payment in the archaeological investigation and excavation from the state budget.

- Circular No. 04/2010/TT-BXD dated May 26, 2010 by the Construction Minister on the setting up and managing the expense for investing in the construction.

- Circular No. 18/2012/TT-BVHTTDL dated December 28, 2012 by the Culture, Sports and Tourism Minister on the regulations for the maintenance, preservation and restoration of monuments.

- Circular No. 17/2013/TT-BVHTTDL dated December 30, 2013 by the Culture, Sports and Tourism Minister on the instruction for identifying the expenses in planning and setting up the economic and technical report of the maintenance, preservation and restoration of monuments.

- Conclusion No. 48-KL/TW dated May 25, 2009 by the Political Bureau on building up and developing Thừa Thiên Huế province.

### **3.3. Legal documents at the local level**

- Resolution No. 06-NQ/TV dated January 20, 1998 by the Standing Committee, Thừa Thiên Huế provincial committee of the party on the conservation and promotion of Huế monument values.



- Resolution No. 14c/2010/NQ-HĐND dated July 21, 2010 by the People's Council of Huế city on the approval of the Tourism Sustainable Development planning of Huế city until 2020.

- Resolution No. 04/2012/NQ-HĐND dated August 28, 2012 by the People's Council of Huế city on the revision of general planning of Huế city.

- Decision No. 230/QĐ-UBND dated January 24, 2008 by the Thừa Thiên Huế provincial People's Committee on the approval of Transport development planning of Thừa Thiên Huế until 2020.

- Decision No. 1218/2008/QĐ-UBND dated May 23, 2008 by the Thừa Thiên Huế provincial People's Committee on assuring the order, security and hygienic environment at the tourist and trade places, entertainment places and public places in the province.

- Decision No. 1874/QĐ-UBND dated August 20, 2008 by the Thừa Thiên Huế provincial People's Committee on allocating the responsibility of monument management (supplement for the Decision No. 2685/QĐ-UBND).

- Decision No. 1381/QĐ-UBND dated July 09, 2009 by the Thừa Thiên Huế provincial People's Committee on approval of general landscape planning at two banks of Hương River from Thuan An seaport to Gia Long tomb, Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- Decision No. 10/2010/QĐ-UBND dated March 22, 2010 by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the Regulation for the hygienic environment of the tourism activities in Hương River.

- Decision No. 1113/QĐ-UBND dated June 14, 2013 issued by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the approval of general disaster risk Management Plan of Thừa Thiên Huế province until 2020

- Decision No. 1347/QĐ-UBND dated July 23, 2010 by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the planning for the forest protection and development in Thừa Thiên Huế between 2009 – 2020.

- Decision No. 2062/QĐ-UBND dated November 29, 2010 by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on regulations for the function, tasks, authority and structural organization of the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre

- Decision No. 06/2011/QĐ-UBND dated March 04, 2011 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the restricted area for mineral exploitation in Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- Decision No. 744/QĐ-UBND dated April 04, 2011 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the plan for the forest protection and development in Thừa Thiên Huế between 2011 – 2015.

- Decision No. 327/QĐ-UBND dated March 06, 2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the approval of the Renovation and upgrading the Lap river at Kim Long ward to prevent from the environmental pollution in Huế city.

- Decision No. 329/QĐ-UBND dated March 06, 2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the approval of the Renovation and upgrading the Kê Vạn river at Kim Long ward to prevent from the environmental pollution in Huế city.

- Decision No. 770/QĐ-UBND dated May 07, 2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the Planning of sand and gravel exploitation in Thừa Thiên Huế province until 2020 and orientation to 2030.

- Decision No. 936/QĐ-UBND dated May 29, 2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the Regulations for the management and using places of collecting sand and gravel in Thừa Thiên Huế province

- Decision No. 1065/QĐ-UBND dated June 13, 2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the Collection and treatment of the common solid waste disposal until 2015, orientation to 2020.

- Decision No. 2295/QĐ-UBND dated December 5, 2012 issued by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee concerning the approval of project for service development on promoting the value of Huế monuments until 2020

- Decision No. 371/QĐ-UBND dated February 21, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the Action Plan to implement the Instruction No. 24-CT/TU dated August 08, 2012 by the provincial committee of the party on building the urban civilized lifestyle and promoting activities to keep the green, clean and nice environment in the province.

- Decision No. 09/2013/QĐ-UBND dated February 23, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the regulations of forest fire prevention and fighting in Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- Decision No. 1393/QĐ-UBND dated July 23, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the archaeological planning until 2020, orientation to 2030.

- Decision No. 1622/QĐ-UBND dated August 26, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the general planning for overall tourism development in Thừa Thiên Huế in the period 2013 – 2030.

- Instruction No. 05/CT-UBND dated February 24, 2011 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the fire prevention and fighting, and rescue.

- Instruction No.32/CT-UBND dated November 17, 2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on promoting the management and protection of the forest.

- Instruction No.10/2013/CT-UBND dated March 12, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on promoting the security and hygienic environment at places for tourism.

- Instruction No.06/CT-UBND dated April 02, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the implementation initiatives of the urgent measurements to protect the forest, prevent from forest fire and fighting.

- Instruction No.07/CT-UBND dated April 08, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on promoting the fire prevention, fighting and rescue in 2013.

- Instruction No.10/CT-UBND dated March 06, 2014 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on promoting the management of the tourism environment, ensuring the security of visitors in Thừa Thiên Huế.

### **3.4. The specific legal documents for the heritage property**

- Decision No.105/QĐ-TTg dated February 12, 1996 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the Planning for the conservation and promotion of Huế monument values between 1996 - 2010.

- Decision No.1272/QĐ-TTg dated August 12, 2009 by the Prime Minister on the classification of Special National Monuments (including the Complex of Huế Monuments that belongs to the area of Huế city, Hương Trà district, Hương Thủy district, Phú Vang district in Thừa Thiên Huế province)

- Decision No.818/QĐ-TTg dated June 07, 2010 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the revised Planning for the conservation and promotion of Huế monument values between 2010-2020.

- Decision No.1880/QĐ-TTg dated December 12, 2012 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the mechanism and policies for the investment to preserve and promote Huế monuments values

- Decision No.54 -VHTT/QĐ dated April 29, 1979 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) on the classification of historical and architectural monuments of Huế Imperial city and mausoleums of emperors Minh Mạng, Tự Đức and Khải Định.

- Decision No.1964-QĐ/VH dated August 27, 1996 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) recognizing the architectural, artistic and landscape values of Thiên Mụ pagoda.

- Decision No.871-QĐ/BVHTT dated May 12, 1997 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) recognizing the architectural and artistic values of Hải Thành fortification

- Decision No.872-QĐ/BVHTT dated May 12, 1997 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) recognizing the architectural and artistic values of Long An palace.

- Decision No.873-QĐ/BVHTT dated May 12, 1997 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) recognizing the architectural and artistic values of Huế Citadel

- Decision No.2890-VH/QĐ, dated September 27, 1997 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) recognizing the the Temple of Confucius (Van Mieu), Nam Giao esplanade, Gia Long tomb and Thieu Tri tomb and Duc Duc tomb in the National Monuments List.

- Decision No. 2009/1998-QĐ-BVHTT dated September 26, 1998 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) recognizing the Hồ Quyền (Royal Arena), Voi Ré temple, Huệ Nam shrine and Đồng Khánh tomb in the National Monuments List.

- Decision No.99/2004/QĐ-BVHTT dated December 15, 2004 by the Culture and Information Ministry (present the Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry) classifying the artistic architecture of Quốc Tử Giám, Tàng Thơ pavilion- Học Hải lake, Tịnh Tâm lake, Tam Toa building (Co Mat Vien) as the national monuments.

- Decision No. 1043/VH-UB, dated June 02, 1999 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on setting up the dossier for the right of land using and setting up the monument zoning mark.

- Decision No.2327/QĐ-UBND, dated October 11,1999 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the detailed planning for the conservation and renovation the cultural heritage and surroundings at southwest of Huế city (the area of royal mausoleums)

- Decision No.2685/QĐ-UBND dated November 23, 2006 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on allocating the responsibility for the management of classified monuments in the province (1st phase).

- Decision No.1874/QĐ-UBND, dated 20/8/2008 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on assigning management tasks of classified monuments in the province.

- Decision No.2468/QĐ-UBND, dated 26/12/2012 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on assigning management tasks of classified monuments in the province.

- Decision No. 23/QĐ-UBND dated January 05, 2013 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the detailed planning for the construction of the area at Nam Giao esplanade and surroundings.

- Decision No. 69/2014/QĐ-UBND dated 20/11/2014 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee regulating the fee collecting system, the management and allocation of the revenues from entrance tickets in the historical and cultural relics belonged to the Complex of Huế Monuments.

- The Action Plan No.35/KH-UBND dated 13/5/2011 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee in the implementation of the Decision No.818/QĐ-TTg dated June 07, 2010 by the Prime Minister on the approval of the revised Planning for the conservation and promotion of Huế monument values between 2010-2020.

- Certification on the right of land use in 2013 at Imperial City (Hoàng Thành), Nam Giao esplanade, Voi Ré temple, Hồ Quyền (Royal Arena), Tầng Thơ pavilion, Học Hải - Tịnh Tâm lakes, Long An palace, Huệ Nam shrine, Thiệu Trị tomb, Dục Đức tomb, Tự Đức tomb, Khải Định tomb, Minh Mạng, Gia Long tomb, Đồng Khánh tomb, Quốc Tử Giám and Huế Citadel..

### **3.5. The principal legal articles applied for the management and protection of the Complex of Huế Monuments**

It can be seen that the Complex of Huế Monuments has been managed, protected and promoted under the international convention and charters as well as the relevant legal documents of Vietnam. The Law on Cultural Heritage and the Decrees and Instructions for the implementation of the Law on Cultural Heritage, are the most important legal documents underpinning the activities of protecting the Outstanding Universal Value and the integrity and authenticity of the World Heritage property.

The key legal documents are as follows:



***3.5.1. The National Law on Cultural Heritage and regulations to implement the Law***

**3.5.1.1. The protecting measurement in the Law on Cultural Heritage in 2001 and the Amendment and supplement to the Law on Cultural Heritage in 2009 (hereafter called the Law on Cultural Heritage)**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 1.1)*

**3.5.1.2. The Decree No. 98/2010/NĐ-CP dated September 21, 2010 by the government on detailed regulations to implement a number of articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage and the Amendment and supplement to the Law on Cultural Heritage (hereafter co-called the Decree No.9802010/NĐ-CP)**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 1.2)*

**3.5.1.3. Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP dated September 18,2012 by the Government detailing regulations on the competence, order, formulation procedures and approval of planning and project of preservation, renovation and restoration of historical and cultural relics. (Hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP)**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 1.3)*

**3.5.1.4. Circular No. 18/2012/TT-BVHTTDL dated December 28, 2012 of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism detailing a number of regulations on preservation, renovation and restoration of monuments (Hereinafter referred to as Circular No. 18/2012/TT-BVHTTDL)**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 1.4).*

**3.5.1.5. Decision No. 86/2008 / QD-BVHTTDL dated 30/12/2008 of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism issuing Regulations for archaeological exploration and excavations** (hereinafter referred to as Regulations for Archaeological Excavations No. 86/2008 / QD-BVHTTDL)

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 1.5).*

***3.5.2. Law on Forest Protection and Development and the regulations to implement the Law***

At some monument sites or monument groups belonging to Huế Monuments Complex, as well as the surrounding landscape related to the heritage area, currently there are a number of area of forests and trees identified in the tables below:

**Table 1: Areas of special-use forests and landscapes related to some monument sites and monument groups of Huế Monuments Complex in the Huế City and Hương Thủy town**

	<b>Commune/ Ward</b>	<b>Subdivision</b>	<b>Plot</b>	<b>Area (ha)</b>	<b>Major tree</b>
1	Hương Long Commune	NTK		5,3	Pine
2	Thủy Biều Commune	NTK		15,2	Pine
3	An Tây Ward	91	2	24,6	Pine
4	An Tây Ward	91	2	29,5	Pine
5	An Tây Ward	91	1	268,7	Pine
6	An Tây Ward	91	1	24,4	Pine

7	Thủy Bằng Commune	154		253,2	Pine
8	Thủy Bằng Commune	153		193,6	Pine
	<b>Total</b>	<b>671</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>814,5</b>	

**Table 2: Amount of trees at monument sites and monument groups**

	<b>Relic area</b>	<b>Quantity (tree)</b>	<b>Major tree</b>
1	Gia Long Tomb	13.625 (updated 2002)	pine
2	Minh Mạng Tomb	1.517 (updated 2002)	pine
3	Thiệu Trị Tomb	1.775 (updated 2002)	pine
4	Tự Đức Tomb	633 (updated 2002)	pine
5	Đồng Khánh Tomb	2.184 (updated 2002)	pine
6	Huệ Nam Temple	220 (updated 2002)	Local plant
7	Nam Giao Ritual Esplanade	6.000 (updated 2002)	pine
8	Imperial City	1487 (updated 2013)	Fruit trees and shade trees

Therefore, in addition to the Law on Cultural Heritage, Huế Monuments Complex is also protected by the Law on Forest Protection and Development, Biodiversity Law and guiding documents of implementation.

#### **3.5.2.1. Law on Forest Protection and Development**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 2.1).*

**3.5.2.2. Forest Management Regulations promulgated together with Decision No. 186/2006 / QĐ-TTg dated 14/8/2006 of the Prime Minister (hereinafter referred to as Forest Management Regulations)**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 2.2).*

### **3.5.3. Biodiversity Law and implementation guiding documents**

#### **3.5.3.1. Biodiversity Law**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 3.1).*

**3.5.3.2. Decree No. 65/2010 / ND-CP dated 11/6/2010 detailing the provisions and implementation guiding documents of some Articles of the Biodiversity Law** (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 65/2010 / ND-CP)

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 3.2).*

#### **3.5.4. Law on Tourism**

Tourism Law stipulates on issues of tourism resources and tourism activities; rights and obligations of tourists, organizations, individuals carrying on tourism business, other organizations and individuals engaging in activities related to tourism.

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 4).*

#### **3.5.5. Law on Environmental Protection**

Law on Environmental Protection regulates on environmental protection activities; policies, measures and resources to protect the environment; rights and obligations of organizations, households and individuals in environmental protection.

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 5).*

### **3.5.6. Law on Mineral Resources and the regulations to implement the Law**

#### **3.5.6.1. Law on Mineral Resources in 2010**

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 6.1).*

**3.5.6.2. Decree No. 15/2012 / ND-CP of the Government dated 09/3/2012 detailing regulations on the implementation of a number of Articles of the Mineral Law** (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 15/2012 / ND-CP)

*(The key related articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 6.2).*

#### **3.5.7. Legal regulations in some other related documents**

**3.5.7.1. Decree No.818/QĐ-TTg on June 07, 2010 of the Prime Minister about the Proposal of adjusting the conservation planning and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics in the 2010-2020 period** (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 818/QĐ-TTg)

*(The key related articles of the Decree No.818/QĐ-TTg in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 7)*

**3.5.7.2 Decree No. 1381 / QĐ - UBND dated 09/7/2009 of the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province ratified the general planning of the landscape areas along the banks of the Hương River from Thuan An estuary to Gia Long Tomb, Thừa Thiên Huế** (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 1381 /QĐ - UBND).

*(The key related articles of the Decree No. 1381 / QĐ - UBND in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 8)*

**3.5.7.3. Decree No. 2318/QĐ-UB dated 07/10/1999 of the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province promulgates the regulations on construction management in accordance with the detailed planning project of Huế Imperial City (hereinafter referred to as Decree 2318/QĐ-UB).**

*(The key related articles of the Decree No. 1381 / QĐ - UBND in the management and preservation of the Huế Complex of Monuments can be found in the Annex no.1, section 9)*



## **CHAPTER 4**

### **EXISTING AND POTENTIAL IMPACTS ON THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS**

The Complex of Huế Monuments includes many relics and monument complexes scattered around 4 districts, towns, and the city of Thừa Thiên Huế Province. As shown through the statistics of 2013, the natural surface and population of the 4 districts, town and the city is 1326.11km<sup>2</sup> and 741,629 people, in which:

- Huế city is of 71.68km<sup>2</sup> and 344,581 people, and 27 wards. Its urbanization is 100%.

- Hương Trà town is of 518.53 km<sup>2</sup> totally and 113,425 people, 7 wards and 9 communes. Its population density is 219 people/km<sup>2</sup>, and its urbanization is 48.1%.

- Hương Thủy town is of 456.02 km<sup>2</sup> totally and 99,756 people, 5 wards and seven communes. Its population density is 219 people/km<sup>2</sup>; and its urbanization is 57.9%.

- Phú Vang district is of 279.87 km<sup>2</sup> totally and 178.103 people, 19 communes and 1 town<sup>2</sup>. The urbanization is 18.5%.

With the heritage locations mingled with the inhabitants on such a large area, it is to be expected that the Complex of Huế Monuments will face many problems resulting from the local socio-economic development.

To have the most appropriate solution for the effective protection and management of the Complex of Huế Monuments, it is essential to determine the factors that might negatively impact on the heritage. At the Complex of Huế Monuments, the factors that may influence on the heritage sites as follows:

---

<sup>2</sup> Source: [http://www1.thuathienhue.gov.vn/portal\\_es/Views/Default.aspx?CMID=30](http://www1.thuathienhue.gov.vn/portal_es/Views/Default.aspx?CMID=30), accessed on March 15<sup>th</sup>, 2014

## **4.1. Potential negative impacts arising from the development**

### ***4.1.1. Transport development***

Overall, Thừa Thiên Huế Province has all types of transport which connects the province with other parts of the country,, the region and the world, including roads, railways, waterways, and airways.

In terms of the road system, the province has 2814 routes with the total length of 4893km and supporting transport system including 477 bridges of 17,080.03m total length, two tunnels excluding Hai Van tunnel, a spillway of 1,230m length and 1,662 large transport signs. Among which there are four national roads of 453,549km length, namely:

- 1A National Highway: 116,058km and the additional road in the Western Huế: 35,837km.
- 49A National way: 91,854km.
- 49B National way: 104,80km (5km overlapping with 49A).
- Hồ Chí Minh Trail: 105km.

Most of the roads are standard and made of sika-bitumen or concrete. To date, 100% of the communes can be accessed via cars.

Concerning the waterways, Thừa Thiên Huế province has a total length of 563km on rivers and lagoons with two deep-water seaports namely Chân Mây and Thuận An. The Thuan An is 13km from the city centre to the north-east. Over the years, it has been invested with five 150-meter-long wharfs which are capable of bearing ships of 1,000 tons, and recognized as the national seaport. The Chân Mây deep-water seaport is 49 km from Huế City to the south. It has been developed with a number of infrastructure items to firstly take advantage of the North-South traffic axis and the East-West corridor creating the motive for the socio-economic development for the next years.

Regarding railways, the North - South railway running through Thừa Thiên Huế province is 101.2 km long which plays an important role in the province's transportation. Besides, Huế railway station is one of the main

stations on the North-South Reunification railway; Hence it must serve a variety of passengers everyday.

Thừa Thiên Huế province has Phu Bai International airport located on the 1A National Highway, about 15 km from the south of Huế city. In the past few years, the appearance and infrastructure of the Phu Bai airport has changed dramatically allowing the Airbus A320 and Boeing 747 could land safely.

For the convenience of local transportation in the coming years , Huế has approved the transportation development planning in Huế till 2020 in the Decision No. 230/QĐ-UBND dated 24/01/2008 for the content on the road traffic and railway network planning specified in Clause 4 and 6, Article 1 , as follows :

***“4.1.1.1. The 1A national highway:***

*- The 1A national highway currently retains 2 basic lanes, the others are for renovation, repair.*

(as per indicated in the Decision No. 230/QĐ-UBND).

Currently, the 1A National highway running through Phong Điền district, Hương Trà town, Hương Thủy town, and Phú Lộc district is enlarged with 2 lanes. Basically, this road does not directly influence on the relics of the heritage site. However, the flyover of 1A national highway from Hương Hồ ward (of Hương Trà town) to Thủy Bằng commune (of Hương Thủy town), the direct impacts on the landscape of the relics are seen. Hence, the World Heritage Committee UNESCO has some recommendations on this issue and Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People’s Committee submitted a report in responding to the Decision 33.COM 7B.85 and Decision 35.COM 7B.81 of the World Heritage Centre, and requested the relevant organizations of province to find the solution for this matter.

More worryingly, a part of the Southwest side-track trespassing the edge Chóp Vung mountain that lies in front of the right of Khải Định emperor’s tomb does influence the geomantic Left Blue Tiger.

Moreover, with the heritage nearby areas, it is noticed that “before building, it is needed to refer the geographical criteria and aesthetic functions”

Concerning this, Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People’s Committee wrote the report on the content of the Decision No. 33. COM 7B and the Decision No. 35. COM &B.81 of the World Cultural Centre UNESCO<sup>3</sup>, and required the concerning authorities of Thừa Thiên Huế Province to have the solutions.

In addition, it should be noticed more that the North of Huế side-track belonging to Hương Thọ Commune is the areas of Nguyễn Lords’ tombs. Especially, the tomb complex of Nguyễn Phúc Nguyên Lord (Trùng Hưng tomb) located at a road side, about 500m from the street. The complex has been suggested to be zoned and classified as the provincial heritage as regulated in the Cultural Heritage Laws. Hence, it is important to pay attention to the impact of the road leading to this relic.

Recently, the 1A national side-track degraded due to the influence of vehicle and weather. A couple of sections which were severely broken have been timely repaired. However in order to minimize the degradation, it is urgent to repair and install the traffic sign system prohibiting the use of horn, oversized vehicle on this road. It is essential to develop the zoning plan of residential, tourist and business areas as well as the rest-stops which meet the requirements of the national highways. The spontaneous development of houses, restaurants and unorganized compartments in the area should be stopped. Additionally, there is a must to develop the green belt in order to keep the clean and green landscape along the way.

***4.1.1.2. The 49A National Highway: Follow the Decision no.356/QĐ-TTg, dated 25/02/2013 by the Prime Minister concerning the approval of the Adjusted Master Zonning of the Road system to 2020 and orientation to 2030; Decision no.649/QĐ-TTg dated 06/05/2014 by Prime Minister on the approval of the Adjusted General Master plan of Huế City till 2030 , vision 2050.***

---

<sup>3</sup> Read more at website của the World Heritage Committee UNESCO: <http://whc.unesco.org/en/soc/352>

With the road running through the front of Khải Định and Minh Mạng tombs, it is needed to reduce the big tonnage vehicles for the vibration reduction and noise. At the same time, the green tree system along the pavements must be developed for the shadow and colour of the road as well as to reduce noise in the heritage surroundings. Importantly, there is imperative to minimize the spontaneous development of plot, shops and restaurant, and to keep the environment clean.

***4.1.1.3. The 49B national highway:***

*On this road, it is important to notice the Trấn Hải Thành fortification. If the road is enlarged, the landscape elements as well as regulations on the I and II protected heritage preservation as required in the Cultural Heritage Law and Decree No. 98/2010/NĐ-CP mentioned in the 6.2.1 and 6.2.2 of the following Chapter 6.*

***4.1.1.4. Provincial road system: To complete the total system of asphalt and concrete road of the province; restore, improve and upgrade it to be of the V level.***

Concerning the roads crossing over the relics (either monuments or archaeological sites), the procedures for permission which require impact assessment must be strictly applied. Particularly, the government agency in charge of monuments management must be consulted on the impact assessment in order to timely revise the construction options. .

Noticeably, the road 12B which connects the side-tracks and Hương Thọ and Hương Hồ communes, Hương Long and Kim Long wards and Huế city crosses over many monuments and attractions such as (Trường Diễn tomb, Trường Hưng tomb, Vĩnh Cơ tomb, Ngọc Hồ tomb, Confucius Temple, Military Temple, Thiên Mụ Pagoda, Kim Long village temple etc.). This road has a high frequency of heavy trucks which shuttle between the Gà Lôi quarry and Huế city. There is a need to enlarge this road while a number of monuments including Literature Temple, Military Temple and Thiên Mụ pagoda which locate close to the roads need special consideration. There is an existing side-track behind

Thiên Mụ pagoda, however the section which crosses over the Literature Temple and Military Temple has become narrowed due to the increasing frequency of vehicles which cause potential risks to the relics. Hence, a careful research for appropriate options to improve this road is in need..

Concerning the national road 49A with a section connecting the T junction of Buddhism Academy to Châu Ê bridge, has been enlarged and heightened. This road may not be enlarged in the future since it crosses over many historical relics including Cơ Thánh tomb, Thiệu Trị tomb, and Hiếu Đông tomb. The enlargement of this road would risk the protected zone I (core zone) of these relics and the heightening of the road would cause flooding. Also importantly, the water drainage system along this road must be protected since it is the stormwater runoff system the fields around Thiệu Trị, Đồng Khánh and Tự Đức tombs. Furthermore, the construction of residential tube-houses in the field opposite of Thiệu Trị tomb must also be stopped.

#### ***4.1.1.5. Planning constructions of bridges on Hương River:***

*- Period 2015 – 2020: Build the bridge over Huong river on the third peripheral road.*

*- Period 2021 – 2030: Build the bridge over Huong river on the fourth and fifth belt roads and the 49A national way (at the section near Hòn Chén temple).*

Currently on Hương River there are several bridges, but with the growth of urban areas in Kim Long, Hương Long, Hương Hồ and Long Thọ, another bridge is in need. Eventually, the new bridge must be in harmony with the landscape of the river and the road system around Huong river, namely Kim Long, Nguyễn Phúc Nguyên, Nguyễn Hoàng, Bùi Thị Xuân. Currently, the Kim Long and Nguyễn Phúc Nguyên streets are among the most beautiful streets in Huế with many historical monuments, mansions, garden houses. The overall landscape of this area is very fragile if the zoning is neglected. Therefore, the future bridges in this area must be designed in the best harmony with the



landscape of monuments and should be identical and standing out from other modern bridges in Thừa Thiên Huế Province.

***4.1.1.6. The planning on the railway transport network:***

*- Plan until 2020: Improve and upgrade the existing national railway system (North-South railways) and Conduct the Zoning in Detail for the modernization of this railway system.*

*- Plan until 2030: Build the new high-speed railway in the west of Huế city, away from the cultural-historical sites.*

The western area of Huế city has an importance to the preservation of cultural, historical values and the landscape of the city. The system of mountains and rivers are interconnected to the tombs of Nguyễn emperors on the geomantic principles. To ensure the integrity of the Complex of Huế Monuments, the natural landscape elements in this region need to be protected as an integral part of the relics.

Therefore, special caution needs to be made in the identification of the risks and potential impacts of the construction of the North-South highways and the high-speed railway in the west of the city.

During the period 2014 - 2015, a project entitled "The overall planning on the green urban traffic system of Huế for the Imperial City and the neighbor areas" which is being implemented with the support of the Asian Development Bank (ADB) and the Korean Ministry of Lands, Infrastructure and Transport. Key components of this project include the planning of car park, the non-motorized vehicle for the Imperial City and its neighborhood. It has been put in consideration that the planning road systems, traffic intersections, sidewalks, parking lots, architectural styles, colours and materials must be in harmony with the overall monuments landscape. The construction of new roads will be limited.

Briefly, because the elements of the Complex of Huế Monuments scatter on a large surface with different geological conditions, the surrounding landscapes of the sites haven't been fully identified in the protective zoning.. Therefore, the development of transport infrastructure, particularly the

development of roads, railways, bridges, the power/water supply and telecommunication system which is close to the relics have potential risks and need be carefully assessed of the impacts before the implementation.

The formulation of projects must strictly follow the procedures in which the technical assessment by government agencies in charge of monuments management and the consultation with local community will be compulsory. These procedures are essential for the development of a well organized transport system in harmony with the cultural landscape, taking into account the valuable monuments in contribution to the sustainable development of a typical heritage city of Viet Nam and the world.

#### **4.1.2. Construction of residential and high buildings around the relic areas**

The Complex of Huế Monuments has gone through difficult decades to restore after the war destruction and the degradation over time. The site is now also facing enormous pressures due to the rapid urbanization.

The situation drew a special consideration of the Government of Viet Nam. In particular, the Decision No. 105 / QĐ-TTg dated February 12, 1996 of the Prime Minister approving the planning project on preserving and enhancing the values of Huế relics in 1996-2010 highlighted:

*“Huế Monuments Conservation Centre must focus on the management and protection of monuments against the destruction and encroachment. The protection and restoration of urban architectural and natural landscapes in the master planning of Huế city must not dispensable from the architectural and natural landscapes of the Complex of Huế Monuments.”*

Because of the population growth both in number of inhabitants and in number of households, the Complex of Huế monuments is facing serious difficulties such as the narrowed landscapes, the increasing tension between conservation and development. The management and protection of monuments against the encroachment and illegal construction become more challenging.

- Under the Nguyễn Dynasty (1802 - 1945), Imperial City was mainly the residence of the royal family and officials.

- After 1945, there were immigrants but with a limited numbers.
- Between 1954 and 1959, 1960 and 1968 the Imperial City was significantly populated due to the war in the countryside.
- After 1975, the population of the Imperial City continued to increase; many housings and apartments were built in the area of the Lục Bộ, Xã Tắc, Lê Trục street, Khâm Thiên Giám, Tây Lộc, River bank, Thượng Thành and the areas of Ngự Hà canal.
- Since 1982, Huế Historical-Cultural Monuments Preservation Company was established to manage monuments of Nguyễn Dynasty. Since 1990, the Huế Historical-Cultural Monuments Preservation Company (which now becomes the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre - HMCC) began the zoning of protected areas for the monuments which belong to the Complex of Huế Monuments in collaboration with relevant authorities.
- After 1995, together with the sharp increase in real-estate price, the encroachment and illegal construction happened more often. Whilst the regulations haven't been detailed, the violation cases within the zone 1 and zone 2 of protected areas continued to arise.
- After November 1999, the construction of high residential buildings suddenly exploded, mainly with the aim to overcome the serious flooding which once happenend. The violation in construction was nearly out of control of government agencies.

With the efforts in heritage preservation, Thừa Thiên Huế provincial People's Committee issued the Decision No. 2317/QĐ-UB dated October 07, 1999 approving the detailed planning of Huế capital city, and the Decision No 2318/QĐ-UB dated October 07, 1999 issuing the Regulations in construction management pursuant to the the detailted planning on Huế capital city. Decision No. 2318 / QĐ-UB (as indicated in Section 3.5.7.3 of Chapter 3) includes the following: *"The houses on four streets around the area of Huế Imperial City such as Lê Huân, Đoàn Thị Điểm, 23-8, and Đặng Thái Thân are permitted to be one storey, the height of which must not exceed 4m, (readjusted to be 6m*

*recently). The remaining streets are allowed to build a two-storey (ie, a ground floor, one upstairs) that must not be over 11m in height.”* As for building density, Thừa Thiên Huế province also specified that the house from 200m<sup>2</sup> building density must not exceed 30%. According to the agency, this provision is to preserve garden houses, and avoid the illegal plot division. It is encouraged to create the green feces, plant flowers and trees in the yard.

Thừa Thiên Huế province, Huế city and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre have made major efforts in supporting local households and factories to relocate from zone I/core zones of the monuments with the priority given to the sites where the urban and monuments landscapes were severely affected. The remarkable achievements were the relocation of a Printing Workshop and a textile factory and about 300 households from the Imperial City. In addition, most of households were also relocated from the area of Thượng Thành and Eo Bầu from Đông Nam gate (Thượng Tứ gate) to the Chánh Nam gate (Nhà Đồ gate)<sup>6</sup>.

Although there are existing legal documents regulating the residential housing and construction in the Imperial City, many high-rises still appeared.

Statistics updated to June 2013 shows that there are 3,590 residents living in protected zone I/core zone of the Complex of Huế Monuments and 181 residents living in zone II/buffer zones. If each household has 5 people on average, the total population is over 17,000. The largest population is in the Huế Capital City, with over 8,000 people while the entire population living around the Complex of Huế Monuments can reach 130,000 – 140,000 inhabitants which account for one third of Huế city's population approximately<sup>7</sup>. Many households among those had certificates of land titles and related land-use properties.

The most recent statistics updated to 2012 recorded about 50 cases of illegal construction occurred in the Complex of Huế Monuments, as well as relic protection encroachment, of which the Capital City had the highest rate (15 cases).

With the present urbanization in Thượng Thành and the on-going housing violations, the “authenticity” and “integrity” of the relics are influenced. So, the update regulations which catch up with the current situation are in need, as well

as strict regulations and specific guidelines for the construction and renovation of buildings in protected zones and the adjacent areas of the World Cultural Heritage site; including the regulations on design of new buildings, facade design and color of houses in this area that must be best suited to the relics.

An eco-tourism area in Dã Viên Islet is in the planning of the province. This islet has been the geomantic Right White Tiger of the Capital City with the meaning of supporting the power of Nguyễn dynasty in the history. Therefore, this planning should have suitable architecture in terms of density and height, should ensure the ratio of green trees so as not to break the geomantic look of relics when viewed from the Capital City, and should avoid the reduction of the presence in the landscape of the two Hương riversides (Hên Island and Dã Viên Island).

#### **4.1.3. Illegal exploitation of sand and gravel in the Hương River**

Years ago, illegal sand and gravel exploitation on Hương River had been occurred very often and caused the severe erosion of river banks endangering the protected zones around the heritage structures in the Complex of Huế Monuments . In the vicinity of the heritage sites including Hòn Chén (Huệ Nam) shrine, Văn Miếu/Literature Temple, Võ Miếu/Military Temple, and Thiên Mụ pagoda , the sand exploiting boats operated near the foundation of embankment and threatened this structure. Around the Literature Temple and Military Temple (in Hương Hồ ward, Hương Trà commune), a number of households leased their land to be used as sand storage areas which locate within the heritage protected zones. Nearby Hòn Chén (Huệ Nam) shrine, the illegal sand exploitation endangered the beauty of the surroundings and the safety of travellers. Around these areas, a serious flood in October 2010 led to severe soil erosion, particularly in the river section crossing over Hương Thọ commune and Hương Trà town affecting hundreds of local households. The main reason was determined the massive sand and gravel exploitation which changed the river flow and the sustainable structure of the Hương River banks. The motorized vessels which were largely used in recent sand exploitation have risked more the river banks than the traditional exploitation methods in the past.

This situation has eventually violated the existing laws and regulations, including the Law of Minerals and its operational guidelines which pointed out: “the areas including the historical, cultural relics as well as scenic spots prohibit the mineral exploration.”

To dress this situation, the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province has issued the Ordinance: "The boats exploiting sand and gravel from the bottom of the river must be 30-50m away from the banks. Particularly on Hương River, the exploitation must be 50m from the bank; at least 100m from the foot of the embankments, bridges, culverts both from the upper and lower sources of Hương River; at least 50m from Thiên Mụ pagoda, Hòn Chén Temple, the landings of Minh Mạng tomb, Vạn Niên water station and other historic sites both from the upper and lower sources of Hương River. "At the same time the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province assigned the People's Committee of Huế city, Hương Thủy town and Hương Trà guided to carry out the clearance of illegal sand and gravel exploiting transport places at the Tuan bridge area and along Hương River. The inspection of illegal exploitation on Hương River had been conducted annually and dozens of cases were detected every year.

On July 07/2012, the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province issued the Decision No. 770 /QĐ-UBND regulating the exploitation of sand and gravel until 2020, vision 2030. Then on May 29/2012, the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế issued the Decision No. 936/ QĐ-UBND on the sand and gravel exploitation management and planning in Thừa Thiên Huế province until 2020, vision 2030. Accordingly, 56 places have been zoned for the exploitation of sand and gravel in 9 districts and Huế city. Among which, 17 places locate in Hương Trà district,, 07 places in Nam Đông district, 06 places in Phong Điền and Phú Lộc districts, 5 places in A Lưới and Quảng Điền districts 4 places in Hương Thủy district, 3 places in Phú Vang district and 2 places in Huế city. Those places are directly controlled by the People's Committee of the districts



and communes. In order to acquire the permission to legally operate these places of sand exploitation, the owners have to meet the following requirements::

- Hold business certificate of registration;
- A written commitment of environment protection (including the internal regulations of the exploitation places);
- Hold a valid permit of construction and have completed the construction and setting up of the exploitation places.;
- Hold a valid permit for Business in Internal water granted by relevant government agency;
- Hold legal land titles or land use rights for the areas which will be use for the sand and gravel gathering;
- Meet the criteria for safety and fire drilling;
- Have the internal regulations of the exploiting places.

In addition, Decision No. 936/QĐ-UBND regulate the design and organization, surface, gates and accesses, fences and operation house.

The zoning of these 56 legal places for sand and gravel exploitation effectively contributed to reduce the illegal exploitation on Huong river, including the section crossing over Huế City and support the preservation of monuments around these areas.

Besides, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre cooperated with the Provincial Department of Police, particularly the Division of Waterways and the Division of Environment in the activities raising awareness for the boat owners, such as the dissemination of the flyers introducing the Law of Mineral and Law of Cultrual Heritage.

#### **4.1.4. The encroachment and water pollution**

- **Huong River:** the green space of Huế urban a half if the water is not counted. The river has long been considered the back bone and the heart of the city. However, the river have recently risked of being narrowed and polluted due to the disorganized infrastructure, the encroachment of new buildings and the pollution.

In the past, the unplanned sand and gravel exploitation as mentioned above caused the soil erosion, water pollution and the change of natural water flows. In addition, the river was polluted due to the water sewage from many factories alongside and the daily waste dumping from local residents.

The river branches faced similar situation. Hộ Thành Hào (a part of the Royal canal) was full of daily wastes while An Cựu canal was polluted due to the rubbish of small vendors.

To address this situation, on June 13/2012, People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province issued the Decision No. 1065/QĐ-UBND approving the project of solid waste collection and treatment in Thừa Thiên Huế until 2015 vision 2020 with the budget of 1,000 billion VND to improve the environmental quality, ensure the public health and contribute to the sustainable development. Huế Environment and Urban Construction Co. Ltd. established a specialized boat group to daily clean up the

Recently, a number of projects on dredging and restoring landscape of the Ngự Hà river (Royal Canal), An Cựu Canal and the defensive moat system has gradually removed the slums to minimize the pollution for Hương River as well as its tributaries.

<b>No.</b>	<b>Lake's name</b>	<b>Total surface (m<sup>2</sup>)</b>	<b>Note</b>
1	Gia Long tomb	44.780	With 560m <sup>2</sup> of islets
2	Minh Mạng tomb	58.832	
3	Thiệu Trị tomb	23.543	
4	Tự Đức tomb	15.272	
5	Lakes around the Imperial City	250.000	
6	Lakes within the capital city	354.270	The lake at the Mang Cá bastion area is not included. (The Trấn Bình Đài bastion)

7	Lakes around the Imperial City	42.600	
8	Lakes in the Imperial City	46.800	

Together with the urban development, the illegal encroachment of local residents considerably reduced the areas of lakes, many parts of the defensive canal were filled up and the canal embankments were used for housing. In response to this situation, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in cooperation with the Urban Management Team of Huế City's People Committee handled many violation cases including the illegal construction waste dumping into the canal at the section in Lương Ngọc Quyến and Thánh Gióng streets (Tây Lộc ward), Đinh Tiên Hoàng and Lê Văn Hưu streets (the area of Học Hải lake, Thuận Lộc ward). In the middle of Mung lake (Thuận Lộc ward), some households built small outdoor altars on the islets, and dump the construction waste and soil to create a walking path stretching from Nhật Lệ street to the islet. HMCC and the local authorities determine to stop these violation cases to protect the area and landscape of the waterway system of Huế capital city.

As shown in the HMCC records, about one fifth (1/5) of the lake surfaces has been filled which mostly locate in the Xuan 68 and Ngo Duc Ke streets; the remaining lake areas are being encroached or dumped with different kinds of rubbish. There are a very limited typical aquatic creatures and plants which exist in these water areas but wild grass and seaweed continue to grow and affect the landscape. In addition, the water which has been severely polluted deteriorates the local living condition.

The circulation of water in the canals of Huế capital city is limited due to many sections of the sewage system is filled and blocked. The situation is closely linked to the local inundation. The water traffic on the capital city area (the Royal Canal) has been impossible because the bottom of the lake was seriously eroded and encroached. To propose solutions and deal with these violation cases have been a tough issue.

In addition, the daily waste water of local households within the the heritage sites of Huế city have been discharged directly into the water system without any water treatment. The most condensed populated areas include Tĩnh Tâm lake, Học Hải lake and Ngự Hà (Royal Canal) (stretching from Thuận Thành ward, Thuận Hòa ward, Thuận Lộc ward and Tây Lộc ward), Ngoại Kim Thủy lake (Đặng Thái Thân Street - north of the Imperial City, and Lê Huân Street- west of the Imperial City), the Mỵ Niệm stream (Dục Đức tomb). The water drainage system in these areas which remain its old and degraded system discharges directly the sewage into the canals and causes pollution. Particularly, the East of the Imperial City (Phu Bình ward), where there are over 150 households is the most polluted area.

Since 2007, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre has conducted a comprehensive research on the waterways system of the Citadel in order to assess the importance of this system to the Complex of Monuments as well as to the daily life of the local residents. The Centre organized a series of activities such as seminars and printing flyers introducing the system and disseminate these documents to the local people and students.

Especially, the Centre coordinated with the People's Committees of the wards in the inner city to resolve the violation cases of encroachment at the lakes: Tĩnh Tâm, Học Hải, Ngự Hà... These activities resulted in the agreement by local residents not to dump construction wastes into the lakes. This effort positively prevented the encroachment of the lakes in the Citadel.

In addition, there are many other projects and programs implemented to protect the natural resources of the Complex of Huế Monuments. For instance, the projects: "The irrigation planning Thừa Thiên Huế province until 2015 and the vision to 2020"; "Research for planning the survey, exploration and usage of sand and gravel of the riverbed"; "Planning on the replenishment on Hương River from Ta Trach reservoir to the Thao Long dam"; "Strategy in developing the water resource of the rivers and canal in Thừa Thiên Huế Province"; "Preservation on the white lotus for the embellishment of Thai Dich lake – Huế

Imperial City”, "Building the artificial reproduction for the pet-carp serving the embellishment of Thai Dich lake-the Complex of Huế Monuments”; “Research in balancing the aquatic plants of Tan Nguyet lake-Minh Mạng Tomb"; and the project "Research and application of the water treatment in the water system of Huế heritage site”.

#### ***4.1.5. The inappropriate management mechanisms for the buffer zone of certain heritage sites***

Beside monuments which were recognized by UNESCO in 1993 according to the nomination file, there are a good number of monuments need to be protected as following:

- Hải Vân Gate, which was once an important and typical natural defensive element in the South of the Huế capital city under Nguyễn dynasty.

- Thánh Duyên pagoda which is one of the earliest Buddhism monuments in Thừa Thiên Huế Province, has significant historical, cultural and artistic values under Nguyễn dynasty).

- The waterway system in Huế Capital City which forms an important part of the structure of the Citadel reflect special historical, cultural and environmental values of Huế Capital City.- Hiếu Đông tomb is a part of the complex of royal tombs under Nguyễn dynasty and has various values about history, culture, and art

- An Dinh Palace is a part of the complex of Huế architecture with neoclassical style as well as special values on history, culture, architecture and art.

- The complex of Nguyễn Lord tombs at Hương Trà commune, and the Cơ Thánh tomb at Hương Thủy commune are a part of the royal tombs system that is closely related to the Nguyễn dynasty and has various historical, cultural, and artistic value.

- Gia Long tomb's landscape is a component part of the Outstanding Universal Value of the complex of royal tombs of Gia Long. It has a unique natural landscape value and shows the choice of location for the tomb and its construction using the feng-shui principles.

- The surrounding landscapes of Hên and Dã Viên Islets, Ngự Bình Mountain are key natural elements which are interconnected with other monuments of Nguyễn dynasty on the feng-shui philosophy as per described in the nomination file in 1993.

- The small and individual monuments which belong to the complex of Thiệu Trị tomb, Đồng Khánh tomb such as Thánh Cung Grand Empress's tomb, Kiên Thái Vương Grand Emperor's tomb, Từ Cung Grand Empress's tomb, Từ Dũ Grand Empress's tomb, etc... These monuments have been attached to the important royal people and reflect different historical periods of Nguyễn dynasty. Hence, these monuments must also be protected and managed together with the respective complex of monuments.

- Vọng Cảnh hill is a natural element with the feng-shui significance regarding relics under Nguyễn dynasty such as the complex of Tự Đức tomb, Đồng Khánh tomb and related royal palaces, Huệ Nam shrine, Thiên Mụ pagoda, Huế capital city, etc. This should be presented in the renomination file as a significant landscape element and appropriate management mechanisms for construction, zoning reasonably, and exploitation of sustainable development of cultural and tourism values should be proposed.

In Huế, the zoning of the protection areas had been implemented before the World Heritage inscription. By 1991, the boundaries for protection of almost relics belonging to the complex of architectural monuments under Nguyễn dynasty were identified. A range of maps were developed and approved by the authorities at all levels, from the local to the Ministry of Culture - Information (now the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism at present). This is the most important legal basis to protect the heritage site, preventing the site encroachment. It is also the basis to relocate the factories, incompatible enterprises and the residential buildings from the core zone. After the Cultural Heritage Law was issued in 2001, Huế adjusted the zoning of the monuments to conform to the regulations of this Law. To date, all the zoning maps with the boundary have been publicly displayed. Some of the important relics were



marked out, such as the Imperial city, Văn Miếu temple, Võ Miếu temple, Khải Định tomb, An Định tomb, Dục Đức tomb, etc. However, due to various reasons, so far many relics have not been demarcated for the protected areas including the Huệ Nam shrine, Đồng Khánh tomb, the cluster of Lord tombs belonging to Gia Long tomb, Cơ Thánh tomb, Thiên Mụ pagoda, the tombs of Nguyễn Hoàng Lord, Thoại Thánh tomb, and Tịnh Tâm lake.

The zoning of protected areas has been conducted for the national and international heritages. However, the protected areas zoned have been limited within a narrow distance of the monuments while the entire feng-shui elements haven't been included in the protected zones due to the widespread distribution of the relics and their relationships with surrounding natural elements such as the royal screen and geomantic pillow. . For example, Tự Đức tomb was zoned since 1991 with 129,986.8m<sup>2</sup> as the World Heritage, but the scope of zoning has not included some of the feng-shui elements because of their large area. Recently, the Dẫn Khiêm Sơn stela has been found in this area as a royal screen of Tự Đức tomb on the Dẫn Khiêm hilltop, and it is far from the wall about 700m to the southeast, belonging to Thủy Xuân ward. This stela along with five other stelae such as Lý Khiêm Sơn, Lao Khiêm Sơn, Đạo Khiêm Sơn, Long Khiêm Sơn, and Cư Khiêm Sơn have a special value associated with their feng shui elements for example: the royal screen, the geomantic pillow, the blue dragon to the left, and the white tiger to the right. In particular, the Cư Khiêm Sơn stela and Lý Khiêm Sơn stela are extremely important of Tự Đức tomb as the geomantic pillow. However, these stelae are located beyond the protected zones and so it is difficult to protect them under the regulations of the Cultural Heritage Law. However, if this stela is put into the protected zones, the management under the Cultural Heritage Law will face difficulties with the authorities as well as the residents in this large area.

#### ***4.1.6. The development of the infrastructure and the impacts of the industrialization and modernization on the heritage environment***

The urban infrastructure is a complex issue of Thừa Thiên Huế. Apart from Huế city, other areas of the province have yet to have the standard infrastructure system. In November 2003, the UNESCO specialenvoy, Laurent Rampon, sent a 54-page report after his 3-week field investigation in Huế to the World Heritage Committee. In this report, he emphasized: “the risks which endanger Huế has appeared, which are the weakness in the urban management, the massive development of uncontrolled infrastructure, the encroachment of the new buildings into the historical relics, and the severe threat to Hương River”.

Along Huong River from Kim Long to Vy Da, there appear high rise buildings and the telecommunication towers. The increasing height of developments in this area not only threatens the landscape of the ancient monuments on the other bank but also interferes the larger view around Ngự Bình Mountain which had been embraced in the hearts of Huế people.

#### ***4.1.7. The exploitation of limestone material***

Due to the geological structure, Thừa Thiên Huế is the end location from Northern Viet Nam to the South where there are limestone mountains providing a key raw material for the cement industry and construction. It is estimated that Thừa Thiên Huế has approximately one billion tons of limestone<sup>4</sup> and other kinds of building stones such as granite, Gabropyroxenit, quartzite, sand, gravel ....

Some mines exploiting limestone are close to the heritage sites: The Long Thọ limestone mines (Thủy Biều ward, Huế City, where there exists Long Thọ hill) consists of 15 million tons; and Văn Xá limestone mines (10km from Huế city) (Hương Vân ward, Hương Trà town) has 229.5 million tons. Additionally, there are many other limestone mines that are being operated such as the Xuân Long (Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà town), Hương Bình quarry (Hương Bình commune, Hương Trà town), the Hòn Chi Vôi (Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà town) that is about 1.5km from the 49A highway and 10km from Huế towards the northwest.about the Centre of Huế city about 10km north-west.

---

<sup>4</sup> Thừa Thiên Huế Geology (In Vietnamese: Địa chí Thừa Thiên Huế) - vol 1 - NxbKHXH 2005, page 29.

Especially the Gà Lôi mines (Hai Cat hamlet, Hương Thọ commune, Hương Trà town, near the Gia Long tomb) located adjacent to the Hương River and Huế fly-over is the mines of the greatest reserves in Thừa Thiên Huế province exploited from 1986 to date.

#### ***4.1.8. The hydropower development in Hương River<sup>5</sup>***

Hương River is of abundant water source that can satisfy the need of the socio-economic development. In recent years, many constructions of irrigation and hydropower has been planned and built gradually, but in terms of the sustainable development and the environmental protection of the hydropower development at Hương River has revealed problems that need immediate solutions.

According to the Planning of hydropower stations in Thừa Thiên Huế province, there are 21 projects of which four are large-scale projects of over 30 MV. A large-scale project is Ta Trach which will serve as a water dam for the water facilitation and flood prevention despite its limited potential power capacity. To date, only a few number of hydroelectric stations were built and have been in operation, namely the power stations in A Lưới, Hương Điền, Tả Trạch and a few reservoirs were built including Tả Trạch, Thượng Nhật, Hương Điền, A Lưới.

Overall, there are a number of risks which occur from the development of hydro dams in Thừa Thiên Huế need consideration as follows:

*- Change and reduce the water flow in the downstream of Hương River:*

The construction and blocking of the water flow at the hydropower reservoirs the tributaries of Hương River do reduce the quantity and quality of downstream's flows. Specifically, at Hương Điền hydropower station, the water storing which lasted from December 2009 caused the water shortage for the farming activities in Bồ river's downstream.

---

<sup>5</sup> [http://lib.wru.edu.vn/index.php?option=com\\_content&view=article&id=805:phat-trin-thu-in-tren-lu-vc-song-hng-nhng-tn-ti-va-cac-gii-phap-nang-cao-hiu-qu&catid=15:bao-tp-chi&Itemid=196](http://lib.wru.edu.vn/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=805:phat-trin-thu-in-tren-lu-vc-song-hng-nhng-tn-ti-va-cac-gii-phap-nang-cao-hiu-qu&catid=15:bao-tp-chi&Itemid=196)

During the flood season, the storm water run-off from Hương Điền hydropower station causes the longer flooding than it used to be without the dam. In addition, the erosion on the two banks of Bo river would be more serious because Hương Điền reservoir is very large. The situation can be worsen because downstream also receives the water run-off from A Lưới hydropower station while the geology of the riverbank is so weak.

*-The reduction of sedimentation in the downstream areas*

The hydropower reservoirs as Bình Điền and Hương Điền retain most of the little mud and sand of Hương River. This could be seen in the lower quantity and quality of sand and gravel collected from Hương River and Bồ river over the time. After the existence of Bình Điền hydropower station, the exploitation of sand and gravel at the Huu Trach tributary has been no longer operated. Thus, the exploitation on Hương river nowadays mainly focuses on the Ta Trach tributary of Hương River from the T-junction of Tuan to Thiên Mụ pagoda, Kim Long and the Thảo Long salty water blocking dam at the end of the downstream areas of Phu Mau commune and Phu Thanh commune influencing the constructions, relics, streets and so on of the littoral inhabitants.

The decline in sediment, mud and sand from the river relates closely to the instability of the seashore in the littoral areas reducing the sediment and nutrient to supply the lagoon system of Tam Giang – Cầu Hai. On the other hand, since the hand is to reduce the flooding and regulate the flow, the speed of the water flow from the estuaries to the lagoon and the sea may be considerably limited.

*- The increase of pollution and decrease of water quality:*

The cleansing of Bình Điền hydropower reservoir before its operation did not meet the required standard. The ADB advisory study on water supply in Thừa Thiên Huế in 2009 pointed out that the reservoir had plenty of dead vegetation floating which consequently caused the strong odour of the hydrogen sulfide from the water scum, color and turbidity of the water. The study showed

that the river section at Bình Điền reservoir and the section of 5km which follows the reservoir were the most odour-polluted.

The result of environmental investigation of the Water Supply Company of Thừa Thiên Huế also showed an increasing level of metal including iron and manganese in the water of Hương River. Although it is still in an acceptable limit, there will be more risks when other reservoirs such as Tả Trạch, Thượng Nhật, Hương Điền and A Lưới will be in operation. Recent researches of the Natural Resource and Environment Institute show that the quality of Hương River tends to decrease, and the risk of water pollution increases gradually in dry seasons.

#### ***4.1.9. Building the water dams to prevent from the river inundation in Hue city<sup>6</sup>***

There are a dozens of water dams on the rivers in Thừa Thiên - Huế Province. The first is Đá dam that was built in the early 20th century to barrier Như Ý river. Its original function is to divide the flow from Hương river into Hương Thủy and Phú Vang communes. The Phú Cam dam was built in 1977 to barriers the upstream of An Cựu river flowing from Hương river to Đại Giang river, then connecting to Cầu Hai lagoon. The La Ý dam was built in 1999 to barrier the upstream of Phở Lợi river flowing from Hương river to Thanh Lam lagoon, etc. All of the dams construction were built for the primary purpose of barrier brine of Hương river in dry season and also to prevent from the small flood and early flood. This ensures that the crops reach around 20,000 ha at the downstream area that also takes  $\frac{3}{4}$  area of fields in Thừa Thiên Huế province.

Finally, the Thảo Long dam built at Hương river's mouth is newly inaugurated in 2004.

It can be said that the construction of dam system preventing the flood from rivers that flow through Huế city contributes remarkably to the prevention

---

<sup>6</sup> <http://vacne.org.vn/tac-dong-cua-ho-dap-thuy-loi-thuy-dien-doi-voi-an-ninh-moi-truong-thua-thien-%E2%80%9393-hue/24334.html>

from the small flood at the downstream area and partly helps preventing from the salwater intrusion in the Hương river. The dams, however, break the previous flood-control planning under Nguyễn dynasty that lead to restrict the ability of traditional flood drainage during flood season. These issues need to be carefully considered to solve problem between development and protection of the environment and heritage sites.

## **4.2. Environmental pressures**

### ***4.2.1. The surrounding environment and landscape of heritage sites under the impact of urban development***

Currently, most of the areas which belong to the buffer zone including the belt landscape are under the control of local government (at district and commune levels). The local government often grants the permit of land use in these areas to local residents. Several impacts

It could be said that the landscape at the Complex of Huế Monuments has been restored to ensure a sustainable environmental development for the heritage site and the life of local inhabitants. The yards of relics have been greenized with more than 20,000m<sup>2</sup> of grass, and filled with trees at Thiệu Trị tomb, Minh Mạng tomb, Đồng Khánh tomb, Huế Nam temple, Nam Giao esplanade; treated the water environment of the lakes at such areas as Hoa Bình, Thai Dich, Ngoai Kim Thuy, Ngoc Dich (Imperial City), and Tan Nguyet (Minh Mạng tomb).

In recent years, the authorities have made major efforts to improve and build the green landscape around the heritage site. However, , there are still a number of monuments facing the encroachment or pollution under the urban development pressures.



#### ***4.2.2. Harmful insects, micro-organisms and fungi on the wooden components***

Thừa Thiên Huế province has the largest amount of rain water in the typical hot and humid tropical monsoon with high temperature and radiation. The annual average rainfall of the province is 2,700mm, or over 4,000mm at Bach Ma and Thua Luu. The most heavy rainfall which occur within 3-4 months makes up 70% of the total rainfall of the year. In this condition, the Complex of Huế Monuments which was mainly built of wood and tile has been highly vulnerable. Almost all royal architectures of Nguyễn dynasty follow the double-roof house style. The roof is connected with the minor-connecting ceiling, above which is the gutter for draining the water flow into the decorative-curved-edges of the roof. The structure creates the spacy interior in the sunny season but humid in rainy season. The heavy rainfall and its long duration increase the weight of the roof causing the leakage and penetration at almost every relic, from which the microorganism may be able to well develop. This also results in the appearance of the mould and parasite, which could be harmful to the heritage preservation, antiquity maintenance, heritage beauty and the archeological excavated relics in the heritage sites.

In rainy season, the weight of relic's roof may increase from 15 to 20%, the wooden components in the traditionall architecture could be more humid leading to the cracking, tile slipping or removing, tenon loosening, mould and termite appearing, so on. Since the wood is vulnerable in the impact of climate and temperature (the climate change causing the erosion from the exterior to the heart of the components. The wood is decayed from the heart to the exterior, or is organically eroded with the impact of termite, mould andmicroorganism.)

#### ***4.2.3. Dust, noise and garbage pollution***

The results of environmental meteorology and other independent surveys show Thừa Thiên Huế still remains generally the purity of the air. However, the urban area and industrial zones begin to have partial dust, noise and exhaust pollution. For instance:

- The city center has certain level of air polluted which is mainly caused by construction works, traffic and noise. Several areas have been affected by the small and medium industrial workshops and factories which scattering within the residential areas.

- Concerning the noise, except the highway where the measurements exceeded the permissible standards, all the other areas are in the safety limit.

- Concerning the waste pollution, there are 3 principal waste types in the city and the government recently has paid proper attention in the investment of waste treatment.

+ Daily rubbish in the residential areas have been collected by Huế City's Environmental Sanitation Company. The rubbish bins are deployed in public places such as streets, parks and heritage sites. However, there is still a large amount of rubbish which are often buried or burned in the residential garden or threw into the river and public places by people who had limited awareness.

+ Industrial wastes from factories and enterprises are collected and transported to the city's general rubbish dump for treatment. There are still several factories bury or burn their wastes while some recyclable litter from food processing factories are sold for local people to feed their cattle. In general, industrial waste has not been an issue in Thừa Thiên Huế.

+ Medical litter, a hazardous waste, has not been properly interest and hasn't specific measures to solve effectively.

Overall, many relics in Huế are exposed to the air and waste pollution. Most of the monuments situated along the key traffic roads are suffered from dust, noise and vibration caused by pass-by vehicles (Khải Định Tomb, Minh Mạng Tomb, Thiên Mụ Pagoda, Temple of Literature, Temple of Martial Arts, Mang Ca Bastion, Tran Binh Dai, Tran Thanh Hai ...)

Many relics are contaminated with solid waste such as lakes and Ngự Hà (Royal Canal) canal inside the Citadel (particularly Học Hải Lake, Tịnh Tâm Lake, Sau Lake, Thanh Ninh Lake, Tien Y Lake, etc.). Several inhabitants living in monument areas show the lack of awareness in protecting relic structures and

surrounding landscapes, therefore, the disposal of garbage which causes water pollution is regularly seen in Tụ Đức Tomb, Dục Đức Tomb, Xa Tac Esplanade and Luc Bo... Many tourist service providers neglect their role in protecting the environment, but contribute to the unsanitary condition at the relic sites. Due attention is paid to residents living on top of the enclosing walls, along the Royal canal and around Tran Binh Dai as these are hot spots of land encroachment, especially surface water encroachment, waste discharge (including garbage and sewage) causing environment pollution and blocked water flow. Thừa Thiên Huế's provincial government has adopted various solutions to improve the environment and landscape of the area. However, it should focus on propagation to motivate local people changing their perception on waste issues, encourage them to protect the environment of heritage which means to protect their own habitat.

#### **4.3. Impacts from the natural disaster risks**



*Photo 20: Workshop on “Developing the Disaster Risks Management Plan for the World Heritage of Hue Complex of Monuments, Hoi An Ancient Town and Thang Long Citadel”, Hue City April 2013.*

Geographically, Huế features a tropical monsoon climate, characterized by the transitional climate from sub-equatorial to the internal tropical monsoon and influenced by both climate attributes of the North and South of Vietnam. The hot season lasts from May to September, influenced by dry and hot Southwest winds. The average temperature during hot months ranges between 27°C - 29°C, the warmest month (July 5, 6), the temperature can reach 38°C - 40°C. The cold season from October to March of the following year, influenced by the northeast monsoon which brings a lot of rains and coldness. The average temperature of the cold season at low land is 20°C - 22°C. The average rainfall is about 2500mm / year. The rainy season begins from September to February the following year. November is seen with the highest rainfall, accounting for 30% of annual rainfall. The average humidity reaches 85% - 86%. Rains in Huế are characterized with uneven distribution, rainfall increases from east to west, from north to south and focus on a number of months with intensive rainfall which may lead to flooding, erosion. Storms are affected by two main wind directions including the southwest monsoon which starts from April to August, featured with hot dry winds, strong evaporation resulting in lasting droughts; and the northeast monsoon which starts from September to March of the following year, when the wind is often accompanied by rain causing cold climate, high moisture and flooding. Typhoons usually occur during August to September or October.

Most of the Thừa Thiên Huế territory is located in the East of Truong Son mountain range, running from the mountainous area to the hilly regions down to narrow plains, so it has a quite large slope. The sloping area of 250 occupies 54% of the province's area. Thus, rivers originated from Truong Son mountain range are short, sloping with many waterfalls. In the province, there are five main rivers including O Lau river, Hương River, Nong river, Truoi river and Bu Lu river, in which the system of Hương River (including Hương River and Bo river) is the most important with the valley area is 2.800km<sup>2</sup> occupying the 3/5 of the provincial area. With the short and sloping characteristics, almost no

buffer zone, time for the flood transmission from upstream to downstream is very quickly (about 4-6 hours). The flood even happens at the same time with the rain with great intensity. This feature results in the fact that flood raises rapidly, even causes flash flood in rainy season; rivers cannot keep water in dry season causing the drought and salinity. The area of treeless hill is about 125,000 ha, accounts for 25% area. Although the coverage is quite high but it is mostly poor forest, so the water-keeping capacity is low. Together with the slope, this is also one of the reasons causing big flood in the province.

Thừa Thiên Huế coastal area accounts for about 30% of the area and more than 80% of the provincial population is living in lowlands at Tam Giang - Cau Hai lagoon system in the East where is the largest lagoon system of the country and among large lagoons in the world.

Because of the topography and specific geographical location, Thừa Thiên Huế is annually influenced by many types of natural disasters such as: hurricanes, floods, tornados, drought, salinity, high water level rise by hurricanes, landslides, coastal and riverside erosion, particularly typhoons and floods have caused a lot of the human and material severe losses and disordered the human activities on a relative large scale.

Key disaster risks in Thừa Thiên Huế province can be classified as in the following order:

#### ***4.3.1. Floods***

The Huế monuments which are located along Hương River are very likely affected by the water level in the flood season. The records of the Provincial Department of Science and Technology indicates that Hương River has the valley area of 2.830km<sup>2</sup>, the length of river of 104km and the altitude of riverhead of 900m. Due to the short and steep upstream where water concentrate and flow rapidly downstream, causing the serious flood when the diluvial rain happened.

The major materials of monuments in Huế are wood, soil and traditional mortar which are easily damaged /deformed and become highly vulnerable due

to water, severe climate and termites. The vulnerability thus makes monuments risk of serious damages in the natural disasters.

#### ***4.3.2. Typhoon and tropical low pressure***

Thừa Thiên Huế is a province in the North Central Coast region of Viet Nam, lies between 16 - 17 latitude North and 107 - 108 longitude East, in the northern hemisphere tropical belt and is a region influenced by the Asian monsoon. Located in the Centre of Vietnam, Thừa Thiên Huế was both affected by the Northeast monsoon and the Southwest monsoon. The convergence of cold air from the north came down and humid and hot air moving up from the south has caused heavy rain, thunderstorms, tornados in this region and formed the major floods and flash floods causing landslides, river bank erosion. Also, Thừa Thiên Huế has 127 km coastline contiguous to the East China Sea - a part of the western Pacific, as well as the planet's biggest storms drive so often affected by the storm. The typhoon season here is from June to November, among them September and October had more storms. However, in some years, the typhoon season starts earlier from April - May, even in August or end later than the end of December. According to statistics of 116 years (1884-2000) the number of storms in Thừa Thiên Huế province (Binh Tri Thien) averaged 0,84 time/year of which no storm in some years, but there are 3-4 repeated storms in some years.

The storm frequency in the months as follows: 35% in September, 28% in October, 18% in August, 7% in July, 6% in November 6%, 5% in June and 1% in May. Hurricanes often caused strong gale, heavy rain and rising water. According to historical documents from the mid 17th century until now, there have been very large storms such as: in 1671, 1680, 1685, 1694, 1769, 1810, 1811, 1826, 1836, 1844, 1848, 1864, 1867 , 1880, 1882, 1904, 1962, 1964.1983, 1985, 1989, 1995, 1998. The storm of September 11, 1904 killed 724 people, 22.027 houses collapsed, 4 spans of Truong Tien bridge collapsed, 529 boat shipwrecked; BASB typhoon of September 16, 1962 with speed recorded at 33m/s (level 12); TILDA typhoon of september 22, 1964 with wind tugging at



level 13 (38m/s). CECIL typhoon of October 18, 1985 near level 12 was badly damaged in 100 recent years for Quang Tri province and Thừa Thiên Huế province: collapsed and damaged 214,000 homes, 2,000 classrooms, 200 hospital - infirmary, 600 high - low tension pole, many historical and cultural relics, 200 people were injured.

The rainfall during the storms and tropical depressions (making up from 40-80% of annual rainfall) in Thừa Thiên Huế depends on the landing station and the combination of storm - tropical depression and other tropical disturbances with cold air. In general, a time it has often rainstorm phase with 4 – 8 days of rain with rainfall of 200 – 300mm, sometime up to 500 – 600mm when the typhoon lands direct in Thừa Thiên Huế province if it combined with cold air. Moreover, when the typhoon went in the coast also caused water rising high very harmful. CECIL typhoon made sea level rise 1.9m in Thuận An beach, 1.7 m in Lang Co and overflowed dyke, went deep into the mainland 2 - 3km, houses and boats were swept away by the water<sup>7</sup>.

#### ***4.3.3. Fire***

The monuments of Huế Monuments Complex which were made of wood and located within pine forests confront the risks of fire. For instance, the most serious fire case was the one happened in 1994 just prior to the Ceremony receiving the UNESCO Certificate of World Heritage. The reason was only due to the carelessness of an employee who burnt a small amount of rubbish but ended up with a big fire of the entire pine forest Minh Mạng Tomb. Another fire was recorded in the back of the Ngọc Trản Mountain belong to Hòn Chén Temple in 2004, After this incident, a big fire in mid 2006 burnt nearly 10 hectares of pine forest in Châu Chũr mountain and spreaded to the rampart of Khải Định's tomb. In 2012, the pine forest in Vong Canh Hill which was associated with the landscape of many important monuments such as Tự Đức, Đồng Khánh, Kiên Thái Vương tombs was burnt in the night. Particularly in

---

<sup>7</sup> Source: *Thừa Thiên Huế monography* (Volume 1) – Nature part, page 98 – Social sciences Publishing House 2005

2013, more than 500m<sup>2</sup> of pine forest in Thiệu Trị tomb also caught a fire. Đồng Khánh Tomb was once threatened by fire when local people burned bee hives in the nearby pine woods. Fortunately.<sup>8</sup>

Hence, in addition to the topographic features, characteristics of the flora, the local practice in burning litter, bee hives have been posing the risk of fire. Moreover, many monuments which are in restoration and construction have messy electric wires left in the wooden architecture. There are also the risks from smoking visitors. Although there are “No-smoking” regulations in place, there are still sometimes visitors who smoke in the areas of monuments where the guards are absent.

Every year, fire police organize a periodic inspection at the monuments as well as the demonstration and simulation of fire drilling. The Huế Monuments Conservation Centre also has an annual investment between 20-100 million VND for purchase and upgrade of firefighting equipment at the monuments. Counting for nearly 20 years, the total amount invested in this equipment is about 1 billion VND. So far, Huế is one of the few localities which organize fire drilling simulation at the monuments.

In addition, the attention has also been made in regularly clearance of dry plants and vegetation (pine jungle, dry pine needle), removing the potential paths for fire to reduce the risk of forest fire. The efforts have also been made in design warning signs, warning of the danger zone in the landscape forest area, design the water path to the landscape forest area to strengthen forest fire prevention.

#### ***4.3.4. Landslide***

Located in the east of the Truong Son mountain range of central coast, the rainfall in Thừa Thiên Huế is influenced by both the southeast monsoon and the typical topography condition. The rainy season in Thừa Thiên Huế closely associated with the northeast monsoon of the first period (when the tropical

---

<sup>8</sup>. Source: <http://tuoitre.vn/Van-hoa-Giai-tri/583889/di-tich-Huế-co-the-chay-bat-cu-luc-nao.html>

turbulence would not undo the south); on September, October and November when the activity zone of tropical turbulence backed down the south, simultaneously the northeast monsoon start strong operations, the heavy rain break out. Thừa Thiên Huế is one of the large rainy areas of Vietnam. Rain impacts strongly on the flow of flood, the intensity of heavy rainfall combined with sloping topography is easy to cause flash floods and landslides.

Landslides in Thừa Thiên Huế occurs mainly in mountainous areas with slopes from 30 -35 degrees along Highway 1A such as Phước Tượng Pass, Phú Gia Pass, Hải Vân Pass, in the districts of A Lưới, Nam Đông, Phú Lộc and along the Ho Chi Minh Trail, the Highway 49. On the Highway 49 at Hồng Tiên commune (Hương Trà) had occurred a huge landslide on November 21, 1999 with rock volume up to 20.000m<sup>3</sup> but without significant damage. According to the preliminary investigation, the province has 15 places of landslides on the banks of Hương River, Bồ River, and Truồi River with a lot of riverside erosion. The serious erosion places often appear in flash floods at Bằng Lăng, Dương Hòa, Hương Hồ, Hương Thọ communes. Landslides happen almost every year and the number of erosion places is increasing.

#### ***4.3.5. River and sea bank slide***

River systems in Thừa Thiên Huế are relatively evenly distributed, but most are short, narrow basin. Almost major rivers flow in the direction from west - southwest to North - North East, converge on the Tam Giang - Cau Hai lagoon before emptying into the sea.

The heavy rainfall influences on the river flows and often causes floods, soil erosion and landslides. There are two types of flood in Thừa Thiên Huế province: *Low flood season* (it usually begins end of May and beginning of June) and *Main Flood season* (usually from October to December). Characteristics of the season main flood, are crest of the flood, flood flow and intensity are often very large. Flooding intensity, water flow caused riverside and coastal erosion. According to historical records, Thừa Thiên Huế has suffered massive floods which altered the whole area of estuaries, for example the flood in 1404 opened

Hoa Duan estuary for the first time, the flood in 1498 opened Hoa Duan for the second time; the flood in 1999 opened Hoa Duan for the third time ... Recently the torrential rains in November of 2011 caused the encroachment of the Hương River bank in Ben Da area of Long Ho Thuong Hamlet (Hương Hồ Ward, Hương Trà Town, Thừa Thiên Huế). The incidence affected the lives and property of 10 households living in the river upstream<sup>9</sup>.

Not only the riversides, rainstorms caused also landslides in coastal. The phenomenon of Thừa Thiên Huế coastal erosion happened frequently and complexly, especially in the area of Thuan An - Hoa Duan and Tu Hien seaport. For example, on November 2012, due to the effects of typhoons, combined to high tides, till now, Thừa Thiên Huế province has 9 points coastal landslides with a total length of about 30km. latest time and October 2013, according to preliminary statistics in Thừa Thiên Huế province, typhoon No. 10 combined to flood tides rise made severe erosion more than 5,000 meters seaside centered in the area of Phu Thuan commune, Thuan An town (Phú Vang district); Hai Duong commune (Hương Trà town); Vinh Hai commune (Phu Loc district). The riverside length in the whole province eroded over 24.1 km; including erosion of the Hương River is 5.5 km, Bo River 8,6km; the rest is the rivers of Truoi, Bu Lu, Khe Tre, Ta Rinh and O Lau. The province has 20,5km dikes eroded, of which, the right-wing dike of Hương River was broken 4km; the western dike of Cau Hai lagoon was destroyed 4.5km in Vinh Ha and the same collapse length in Loc An; the eastern dike of Tam Giang lagoon at Hai Duong Commune collapsed 4km; other broken parts can be seen at the western dike of Tam Giang lagoon at Huong Phong, the eastern dike of Tam Giang lagoon at Dien Hai, etc..

Hard embankment in concrete and stones has been key solutions to prevent soil erosion to date. In the long term, breakwaters built of stone blocks is identified a proper solution to effectively prevent soil erosion. . However,

---

<sup>9</sup> . Serious landslide in Thừa Thiên Huế – source: <http://vov.vn/Doi-song/Sat-lo-nghiem-trong-tai-Thua-ThienHuê/190782.vov>

breakwaters require huge investment which will need more support from the Central Government.

In the mean time, local efforts have been made in equipping essential facilities such as rescue boats, life jackets, etc. in the areas frequently affected by natural disasters. At the provincial level, the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế has recently approved the investment projects in the maintenance of dykes to leverage the capacity in storm and flood prevention and mitigation. The focus areas include Phong Điền, Quảng Điền and Phú Vang and Phú Lộc districts, giving priority to the construction of culverts to prevent flood in the Lâu River, the maintenance and repair of embankments in the lowlands of Hương River, Bồ river, Như Ý river. In addition, a casuarina plantation is also identified a solution to effectively prevent soil erosion. Local authorities have also been urged to conduct public awareness campaigns and encourage local residents to plant green belts (casuarina and local trees) to prevent soil erosion in the river bank and coastline areas which confront serious erosion.

#### ***4.3.6. Thunder, thunderstorms, whirlwinds***

Thunderstorms often occur in Thừa Thiên Huế in the low tropical pressures and often accompanied by strong winds, showery, hail. Thunderstorms can happen between February and November, but mostly occur in the period from April to September. There is an average of 96-144 days of thunderstorms every year in the entire province (South Eastern areas: 144 days, coastal basin: 108 days and A Lưới region: 96 days). The highest density is in May with 18-27 days which have thunderstorms.

In Thừa Thiên Huế, it is also recorded on April 7, 1981, a tornado with wind speed of level 13 (40m/s) happened in A Luoi district. In 1997 there were other six whirlwinds and two of them associated with hailstones of 5cm in diameter causing great damage to local inhabitants. Another tornado with wind speed of level 10 (about 23m/s) damaged Phú Vang district in September 25, 1997 and caused a total loss of VND 8 billion. In 2003, four tornadoes occurred in the town of Hương Trà, and the districts of Phong Điền, Phú Vang and Phu Loc.

This severe weather caused damages to the monuments. For instance, in 2008, a part of the roof floor of An Hòa gate struck by lightning. In March 2009, lightning struck and damaged Quảng Đức gate which is one of the 10 main gates of the Huế Citadel. In this incident, about one third west roof of the gazebo were broken or dropped, a part on the top of the gazebo roof broken. The lighting system around An Định lakes and the electrical system in Khâm Văn (Imperial City) were blown out by thunderstorms and lightning. More dangerously, lightning struck the electrical system at Phủ Nội Vụ (former office of Huế Fine Arts College) which caused explosion and fire. The fire was controlled and extinguished by the guardians of HMCC and local police.

In the efforts of disaster prevention and mitigation, a modern lightning prevention system was installed to protect buildings from the effects of lightning in thunderstorms in Huế. The recent lightning prevention systems in the gates of Citadel protect both local people and tourists and also reduce the damage caused by natural disasters.

#### ***4.3.7. Saltwater intrusion***

The province has a typical topography with the 54% of the territory which has the slope over 250<sup>0</sup>. Rivers which mostly originate from the Truong Son mountain are short (compared to rivers in the North and South of Viet Nam), sloping with many waterfalls. This condition causes the rapid rise of flood level in rainy season.

The salinity of the Hương River water fluctuates with big difference between the upstream and downstream. Specifically, the average salinity at the river sections from Giã Viên in the downstream increases in dry season and reached its peak in August. At the Sinh junction and in front of Thảo Long barrage, the average salinity is respectively 6.55 and 6,74o/oo. Saltwater intrusion is phenomena that happen frequently every year, especially during the El Nino year in Thừa Thiên Huế. Although it doesn't cause immediate human loss, it in fact seriously affects the local livelihoods in agriculture, industry as well as causes complex impacts on environment and health. The record shows

that the longest river section which was affected by the salinity intrusion in the Huong River is about 30km from the sea. The lowlands in the Huong and Bo rivers are mostly impacted areas (2.000 - 2.500 ha).

In addition, saltwater also has many negative effects on local life as well as biology. For example, it makes washing and cleaning with soap less effective, accelerates corrosion of equipment, containers, and metal cooking utensils. Saltwater vandalized buildings underwater, killing plants which can not adaptable to salinity. Thus, in the dry season, the water of Huong River downstream can directly affect the flora of the edge lands, if there is no effective anti-salt regime. Recently Thảo Long dam has proved to be effective in preventing saltwater intrusion. However if this the barrage in this dam will be opened during dry season the salinity will have stronger impacts in Huong River.

#### ***4.3.8. Drought***

Thừa Thiên Huế territory stretches in the northwest - southeast, including about 75.9% of the total area of the mountains and hills, 24.1% coastal plains, lagoons and sand dunes surrounded by Trường Sơn mountain range in the west with a height of 500 - 1800m and Bạch Mã Mountain in the south with a height between 1200 - 1450m. The mountains effect on stopping northeast monsoon and southwest monsoon enhances heavy rain in the rainy season and cause effects "Foehn" is the cause of hot dry weather and drought in summer. In Thừa Thiên Huế province, hot dry southwest wind in the summer begins in late February and ends in early September in the coastal hilly areas. The highlands of above 500m rarely have this weather. The number of average days of the hot and dry southwest wind in the summer on the plains is 35 days; in the South East basin is 55 days. The popular period of the hot and dry southwest winds on coastal plain fell from May - August with the maximum in June (10 days), in the valley of the Nam Đông during from March - August with maxima in July (12 days). The hot and dry Southwest winds in the summer extend from 2-3 days (the beginning and the end of the season) to 3-5 days (mid-season). Extreme



weather like dry and hot southwest monsoon lasting for months could result in severe droughts (the prolonged 41 hot days from May 25 to July 4, 1997).

Concerning the drought index, in the plain areas of Thừa Thiên Huế province, there is a very limited of rainfall during 6 months (from March to August) and the drought index ranges from 1.02 to 2.05. In Nam Đông district, the drought period lasts one month (March) with drought index value of 1.79. In A Lưới and its neighbour areas in the western region of the province rarely have dry period.

The drought index in Thừa Thiên Huế province varies from 0 months (in A Lưới) to six months (in coastal areas). To be prepared in the drought periods with limited rainfall, attention needs to be made in the measures of irrigation, planting and protection of riverhead forest <sup>10</sup>.

In the past, there were the severe droughts such as in 1977, 1993-1994, 1997-1998, 2002. Some river and streams were dry after the drought in 1993-1994, perennial plant dead, saltwater intrusion in the Hương River has lost 12,710 hectares of summer rice estimated 20,000 tonnes of rice lost.

#### **4.3.9. Earthquakes**

According to the Institute of Geophysics (Vietnam Academy of Science and Technology)<sup>11</sup>, Vietnam is located on the edge of mainland Asia Southeast, stretching over 2,000 kilometers, was determined to be the average seismic. For Thừa Thiên Huế province, according to historical figures, in November 1829, there was a strong earthquake level 7 (according to the MS.K international earthquake scale in 1964 equivalent level 5 Richter degrees) caused collapse and vibration in the northern citadel by earthquake<sup>12</sup>.

(See: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, 2013, *Disasters and Risks Management Plan for the Complex of Huế Monuments*, Annex 9: *Disasters happened in the past in Thừa Thiên Huế province*).

---

<sup>10</sup>. Source: *Thừa Thiên Huế monography* (Volume 1) – Nature part, page 97, 98 – Social sciences Publishing House 2005

<sup>11</sup> Institute of Geophysics. Maxima seismic zoning map. Ha Noi, 2004.

<sup>12</sup> Meteorology. Earthquake in north of Vietnam. Ha Noi, 1968.

#### **4.4. Impacts from the tourism development**

In recent years, Thừa Thiên Huế province becomes a tourism destination of the country with a growing number of visitors. In 2013, the province received 2.6 million tourists and had tourism revenue which contributed over 54% of the provincial GDP. In 2014, the province received 3 million tourists approximately of which 1,3 million are international tourists . The average lengthstay of visitors in Huế is about 2 days/person.

In 2013, 2,1 million of visitors came to Huế relics. The sales of entrance ticket to reached 126 billion VND. Overall, the number of visitors coming to Huế increase at an annual rate of 12.77% between 2000 and 2011 the tourism revenue also increases at the rate of 22.89% / year<sup>13</sup>.

The of the Complex of Huế monuments scatters on large areas in four districts including Huế, however, visitors often stay in the city center only. By December 31, 2013, there has been 526 accommodations units including 205 hotels with the total capacity of 7,343 rooms and 13 206 beds. Among those, there are 122 hotels from 1-5 stars and 5,198 rooms, 9,350 beds, of which 25 hotels from 3-5 stars with 2,918 rooms, 5,087 beds. The hotels are mostly located in the city center and account over 90% of hotel business in Thừa Thiên Huế province.

There are about over 100 and 42 travel companies are in operation in Huế. The river wharfs provide important tourism facilities which coordinate the tourism activities on the waterways. Currently there are 26 wharfs along the Hương River in Huế which serve for 127 tourist boats.

The shopping centres and commercial centres are concentrated in the city center such as Green Hotel supermarket, Huế Plaza Supermarket, Truong Tien north supermarket, Big C supermarket, An Hoa supermarket, Truong Tien Plaza commercial centre, Rich trade centre Plaza commercial centre. Besides, there

---

<sup>13</sup> Assessing the tourist attraction possibility of Huế's destination - Journal of Science, Huế University, volume 72B, No. 3, 2012.

are more than 20 markets in the city of Huế, among them a number of important clue markets such as: markets of Đông Ba, An Cựu, Tây Lộc, Bến Ngự.

The objectives and forecast of specific targets and the orientation for tourism development in Thừa Thiên Huế province are reflected in the Decision No. 1622/QĐ-UBND dated August 26, 2013 approved by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province, concerning the General Planning for tourism development in Thừa Thiên Huế in the period 2013-2030. Key highlights are

## ***"II. Targets and specific targets forecasts***

### ***1 The general objective***

*Focusing on tourism development as a key economic sector, striving till 2020 leading Huế became the top destination in the region; till 2030 building Thừa Thiên Huế became a destination on par with the City's Cultural Heritage in the world.*

### ***2. Specific objective***

*a) From 2015 to strive with travel services to contribute to over 50% of local GDP, in 2020 reaches from 52-53%, in 2030 over 55% contribution to GDP confirming Huế is a national tourist main point, tourist services is a key factor in the development of the locality.*

*b) Forecast of development targets to 2020 and orientations to 2030:*

#### **- Predicted Number of Tourists coming to Thừa Thiên Huế**

*+ In 2015 will attract over 3 million tourist arrivals, among them international tourists reach 1.2 million.*

*+ In 2030 will attract 12 million tourists, among them foreign tourists reach 5 million.*

#### **- Expected number of Tourists served by accommodation establishments**

*- The number of accommodation establishments: in 2015 with 12,800 rooms; in 2030 with 61,400 rooms.*

- *Target of jobs: in 2015 create jobs for 13,000 workers; in 2020 about 22,000 workers; in 2025 about 37,000 workers; in 2030 about 62,400 workers.*

- *Average tourist growth in the period 2015 - 2030: 11%.*

- *The average expenditure of tourists:*

*The leverage expenditure in accommodation establishments:*

+ *In 2015 is estimated more than 1.1 million VND/day for international tourists; 0.51 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

+ *In 2020 is estimated more than 1.2 million VND/day for international tourists; 0.66 million for domestic tourists.*

+ *In 2025 is estimated more than 1.4 million VND/day for international tourists; 0.83 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

+ *In 2030 is estimated more than 1.7 million VND/day for international tourists; 1.05 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

*The average expenditure in society:*

+ *In 2015 is estimated more than 2.7 million VND/day for international tourists; 1.3 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

+ *In 2020 is estimated more than 3.1 million VND/day for international tourists; 1.6 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

+ *In 2025 is estimated more than 3.6 million VND/day for international tourists; 2.1 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

+ *In 2030 is estimated more than 4.2 million VND/day for international tourists; 2.6 million VND/day for domestic tourists.*

- *Target of tourisme GDP and dentensy in GDP of province:*

+ *In 2015: 3.080 billion VND occupied 11.7% of GDP in the province.*

+ *In 2020: 6,182 billion VND accounted for 13.1% of GDP in the province.*

+ *In 2030: 25.025 billion VND accounted for 17.2% of GDP in the province.*

### ***III. The orientations***

#### ***1. Development of domestic and international tourism***

*a) Domestic tourists: Focusing on tourists in the urban area in the country. Focusing on markets with high spending capacity, appropriate needs with the type of Thừa Thiên-Huế tourism, especially cultural tourism, resort tourism, marine tourism ...*

*b) International tourists: Maintaining exploitation from the traditional markets of Europe, North America, focusing on exploiting the potential market of Northeast Asia and ASEAN countries.*

## ***2 Development of tourism products***

### *a) Development of traditional tourism forms*

*- Cultural tourism: Cultural tourism is now key form, as specific tourism products, focusing on exploiting the potential of culture, especially the values of tangible and intangible culture in the Huế city, the towns of Hương Thủy, Hương Trà and districts. The main products include:*

*+ Visite of historical and cultural relics, especially the values of Huế Monuments Complex, revolutionary relics, relics of President Ho Chi Minh, the religious beliefs relics and new cultural tourism zone.*

*+ Festival tourism*

*+ Spirituality tourism.*

*+ Trade village tourism.*

*+ Culinary tourism.*

*+ Visite of cultural and ethnic minorities.*

*- Resort tourism combined with treatment.*

*- Marine tourism: promouving the strong position of the natural and humanistic potential in the areas along the coast such as Thuận An, Cảnh Dương, Lăng Cô...*

*- Ecotourism: exploiting the ecological potentials of Thừa Thiên Huế with the main products; tourism in the rural area based on the community; ecotourism of forest, lakes, lagoons and ecological marine.*

*- Tourism and entertainment.*

*- Tourism of conference -workshop (MICE).*

*b) Development of tourism products innovative and distinctive*

*- Focusing on invite investment and deployment of key tourism projects:*

*+ The kibbutz: Urban - Tourism - Ecology - Agriculture.*

*+ Phú Bài airport*

*+ Lập An ecological village*

*+ Vinh Thanh floating Hotel*

*+ Thuận An floating Hotel.*

*+ Superior Town in the middle of rice fields in Cau Hai lagoon.*

*+ Bạch Mã Resort.*

*+ A Lưới cultural Village - Ho Chi Minh Trail.*

*+ Rain village and Luong Quan Artisan.*

*+ MICE conference Centre and traditional arts Centre*

*- Implementing projects to open water space development orientation for*

*Thừa Thiên Huế:*

*+ Cồn Hến Project - Another aesthetic culture of Huế.*

*+ Green Travel City Chan May - Lang Co.*

*- Development of tourism products in Huế rain.*

*- Implementing Project cruise on the Hương River Huế associated with Ca Huế (traditional singing).*

*- Restoring the traditional trade village and combined the spiritual and cultural space with tourism.*

*- Developing model for sustainable tourism development towards green growth, of which Huế is the Centre of model urban development of green tourism.*

**3. Organization of tourism space**

*a) Focusing on building Huế city become the national tourism Urban associated with surroundings and the coastal range come into central tourism complex.*

*b) The south and southeast area: exploiting strengths position of resort tourism, marine ecological tourism of zones of Chân Mây, Cảnh Dương, Lăng*

*Cô, Hải Vân. Constructing resorts Lăng Cô – Cảnh Dương are major general tourist area of the countries, the Bach Ma national Park is national tourist destination.*

*c) Development of the area along the Ho Chi Minh Trail, A Lưới district*

*The model, space of new tourism development:*

- Huế - A natural park.*
- Huế and rural model.*
- Green City Chân Mây - Lăng Cô*
- Development of water space tourism*

Besides the positive impacts, tourism activities may also have negative impacts on the conservation of cultural heritage in Huế Monuments Complex. Potential negative impacts have been identified, including:

#### ***4.4.1. Lack of integrated planning and sustainability of tourism development***

These are problems that the authorities of Thừa Thiên Huế province recognize for these many years, which has built a series of measures to implement the planning and strategy of tourism development in the Thừa Thiên Huế province. This is reflected by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province has issued many legal documents on management of tourism planning in Thừa Thiên Huế province in general, in Huế city in particular. However, it is confirmed that this problem cannot be solved overnight, but need to focus on resources, as well as take the initiative in implementing in the long-term with the goal to Huế Monuments Complex is sustainable development, and to Huế is worthy with brand name "***Huế - A Homeland of Happiness***".

#### ***4.4.2. Tourist disturbance by street vendors***

There has been a remarkable tourism development in the province recently with many positive signs such as infrastructure upgraded and the constantly improved tourism environment. However, the management of tourism attractions and focus areas still confronts many issues. Among those, the public toilets, improper competition and typical tourist disturbance due to



clinging, beggary, etc are key issues. In the future, HMCC and related government agencies determine to work closely together to propose adequate solutions in response to those issues in order to develop a better tourism environment and encourage visitors to the World Heritage Complex of Huế Monuments.

#### ***4.4.3. Visitors overload in the heritage sites***

The presence of too many tourists at one point of relic creating chemical and mechanical effect (carbon dioxide from the breath) mixed with the tropical climate factors causing damage to monuments and other dependent objects such as paintings, photographs, ornaments and tools (equipment) of worship.

The pollution from dust, oil, gas by means of transport, bottles and bags of waste (litter) also causes affecting the cultural landscape and ecological environment of heritage and nature.

Huế receives tourists throughout the year but the sudden increase of visitor number often occurs in coincident with Huế Festival which is organized every 2 years in even-numbered years or during the Nam Giao Festival, Xa Tac Ceremony, Hon Chén Temple Festival, Lunar New Year and many other national holidays. The figures have proved that Huế has built and consolidate its branding of a heritage destination in Viet Nam. During the Huế Festival 2014 which only taken place from April 12 – 20, 2014, Huế Monuments Complex received about 200,000 tourists, among them about 100,000 international tourists. The number of tourists came unevenly in the Heritage sites, which most often concentrated in the Citadel, the Imperial City, Thiên Mụ Pagoda, Hòn Chén Temple, Khải Định tomb, Tự Đức tomb and Minh Mạng tomb. Other relics have the less tourists such as Hải Thành fortification, Hồ Quyền-Voi Ré (Royal Area and the temple of the Roaring Elephant), Văn Miếu (Temple of Confucius) – Võ Miếu (Temple of Military).

In fact, the elements of Huế Monuments Complex scatter in cover four districts, town and the city and do not have to confront the serious overcrowding in any particular relics. The major concern is to ensure easy access for visitors

and avoid congestion at the entrance of the Citadel. In response to this need, the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province issued the Official Letter No. 4786/UBND-CT to regulate traffic flows in the area of Huế Citadel on October 18, 2012. Accordingly, all narrow bridges of Huế Citadel are limited to one-way traffic for cars as follows:

*"Vinh Loi Bridge: traffic from the north over the south; Ninh Khanh Bridge: traffic from the south over the north; Kho Bridge: traffic from the north over the south. The primitive means, motorbikes, motorcycles and pedestrians remain normal two-way traffic across the bridge above.*

*The regulation to prohibit traffic of trucks over 5 tons, passenger cars over 30 seats in the Huế Citadel; in the cases of necessity and with a legitimate need it's obliged to obtain permission from the competent authority according to the Traffic Regulations and the terms of rules and guidelines related.*

*The trucks less than 5 tons, passenger cars from 12 to 30 seats only circulate off-peak hours in the Citadel area.*

*The motor vehicles transporting construction materials (soil, rock, sand, macadam, and other construction materials) are only allowed to circulate in the Citadel area in about from 21h to 05h the next day and had carefully concealed, ensured environmental hygiene, been responsible for cleaning hygiene before 07h the next morning in case of spillage on the roads ".*

#### **4.5. Pressures from the population growth of the living community at the heritage sites**

##### ***4.5.1. Dwelling construction in the area of heritage sites***

Residents living in monument protected zones are increasing due to natural population growth, leading to increased practice of illegal land occupy and house extension.

Whilst the zoning of all protected areas (buffer-zones) has not been completed, many violation cases still occur in several heritage sites. Besides, the general public awareness of environment and heritage protection is still limited. In addition, the previous violation cases which were not adequately

resolved generated negative precedents for subsequent violations. There is a lack of regulations on residential architectural planning and construction as well as a lack of comprehensive studies on the impacts in the buffer zone and adjacent areas of the monument.

The need in consolidating residential houses is essential for local people to avoid flooding and protect themselves in storm seasons. However, the spontaneous house upgrade and construction of the households living in the heritage sites have generated considerable issues:

- *There have been practices where local people living in the relics distorted or even eliminate the historic monuments:* the examples are in the Citadel area (Citadel rampart area, rampart strait), inside the Imperial City (Royal Treasury, Grand Queen Mother's Residence, Queen Mother's Residence ...), Lịch Đại Đế Vương temple, Lê Thánh Tôn temple, etc....

- *Destroy monument environment and break the original master plan of the monuments:* The bad practice can be found in many monuments. Inside Huế Citadel, thousands of local households broke the original plan. A lot of traditional garden houses disappeared or narrowed; houses with modern architecture, especially the "tube" houses are increasing while the rate of trees and water surface gradually decreases in contrast to the growth of population. There are now only about 30 lakes remained in the Inner City in comparison to over 50 lakes existed before 1945. .

- *Encroachment and narrowing of ruins space:* The traditional buildings often have large plans but unfortunately the spaces have been quickly narrowed. For instance, the complex of tombs of Gia Long, Minh Mạng, Thiệu Trị, Tự Đức which used spread on the area of hundreds hectares under Nguyễn Dynasty, have now been reduced by ten times to a few dozen hectares due to the increase of population in the buffer-zones. The situation has negative impacts on the values of the relics.

However, it should be noted that the encroachment in the Citadel took place long time ago, before the regulations on heritage protection existence.

Many families have lived in the core area of monuments for generations. Therefore, the relocation of these households from heritage sites requires appropriate measures to ensure both proper resettlement location and livelihoods. The task requires land availability and huge financial resource. At present, due to budget constraints and the difficulty of finding land for resettlement, the relocation of residents living inside heritage sites is facing complicated situation, which significantly influence local development investment policies. A typical example for this is the project for wastewater drainage of Huế City. Due to difficulties in land clearance and resettlement for more than 260 residents living in region I of Ngự Hà (Royal Canal) and more than 100 households occupying areas along ponds and canals in the Citadel, the investment in building drainage systems for the northern part of the river has to be cancelled until phase II (after 2015) rather to be implemented in phase I (2010-2015) as being expected<sup>14</sup>.

The rapid growth of population in the Citadel has also been a constraint for the implementation of conservation policies of Huế City, including the conservation plan of the Huế traditional house and garden house system inside the Citadel (with minimum area of 200m<sup>2</sup>/house) to preserve the ancient beauty and harmony for this area. In fact, many traditional houses have been modified and lost its original beauty. Besides, there are also a number of complicated issues generated due to the need of dealing with a living community within the core zone of protected areas in many management aspects, including the restoration and embellishment works of monuments.

---

<sup>14</sup>Since 2006, Thừa Thiên Huế province has promoted construction investment project concerning waste water drainage system for the entire city with the tentative capital source of 20,883 million yen (360 million USD). This project is expected to borrow ODA of JBIC's bank (Japan). This project will be divided into two phases: Phase I (2008-2016) and Phase II (2016-2020). Initially, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre offered to implement phase I in the north of Hương River in order to promptly resolve the problem of flooding, to protect inhabitants and heritage, but because of some subjective difficulties, especially inhabitants' clearance in relic's areas should accept the project moved through phase II. But the ability to implement projects' phase II is very low

#### ***4.5.2. The loss and theft of antiquities***

In the History, Huế once was the convergence centre of the antiques, treasures of the country. However, a lot of antiques and precious items which belong to the Complex of Huế Monuments are now scattering around the world. The records show that antiquities of Hue were remarkably stolen several times in 1775, 1862, 1885, 1945, 1947 and 1972. Since 1975, especially in the 1980s, a series of precious antiques at the royal tombs were dug and stolen in the historic sites in Huế city and surrounding areas.

Presently, Huế antiques were mainly housed in museums under the direct government control, namely Huế Museum of Royal Antiquities (which belongs to Huế Monuments Conservation Centre), Thừa Thiên Huế provincial Museum of History and Revolution (with 2,200 objects) and Huế Cultural Museum (which belongs the People's Committee of Huế city). Besides, Huế also has dozens of private collections of high value.

Among the government museums, over 11,500 objects are managed by Huế Museum of Royal Antiquities. Among those 8,800 objects are stored and exhibited at the sites of the museum, including An Định Palace, Tả Vu building in Imperial City, Trai Cung at Nam Giao Esplanade, Thiên Định Cung (Khải Định tomb) and more than 2,760 objects are preserved and exhibited in the royal tombs and other monuments.

The matter of space for exhibition and security of antiques appear to be a critical issues in the context that Huế relics locate on a vast area whereas the security force is understaffed; the number of security cameras and equipment are insufficient.



## **CHAPTER 5**

### **OBJECTIVES AND PROPOSED POLICIES FOR THE MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION OF THE HUÉ COMPLEX OF MONUMENTS FROM NEGATIVE IMPACTS**

The key objective of heritage preservation has been emphasized in the protection of the authenticity and the outstanding universal values of the nominated property by using effectively management tools, policies, planning, action plans, organizational structures and social resources. The heritage preservation must contribute to the economic development and social and cultural devevelopment of community while remains the original values of the heritage to hand over to future generations. In order to achieve these goals, it is necessary to identify the management objectives, principles and measures in the prevention of potential risks which threaten the heritage authenticity and its significant attributes.

#### **5.1. Management of development pressures**

##### ***5.1.1. Objectives***

The overall objective is the identification of a long-term development strategy for heritage and buffer zones with an adequate zoning which specifies the construction ratios, height of buildings, taking into account the important fengshui and landscape elements attached to the relics of the Complex of Hué monuments in contribution to ensure the authenticity and sustainable development of heritage values; prevent the risks to biological system and promote local living standards in against the development pressures.

In addition, the management objectives also focus on balancing the conservation and development. In the one hand, heritage preservation will not block but contribute to development. On the other hand, economic development must be effectively managed in order not to cost the authenticity and outstanding universal values of the heritage. At the same time, economic development must generate essential resources for the preservation and promotion of heritage, in



contribution to the development of Thừa Thiên Huế province to be a model of **an urban heritage which is friendly and rich of cultural, biological values, scenic landscapes.**

In order to achieve the above-mentioned objectives, the priorities must be put in an adequate development of professions and a limit of businesses which cause risks or threaten the natural and cultural values of heritage, ensuring the economic development will not exceed the heritage capacity. By doing so, the heritage values would be durably preserved. Specific policies have been proposed as followings:

#### ***5.1.2. Proposed policies***

In order to achieve these above-mentioned objectives and mission, specific policies and management mechanisms need be identified in the socio-economic development plans:

a) The urbanization, new social, economic services, infrastructures must be developed in harmony with natural, social and cultural conditions in order to effectively preserve the heritage authenticity and prevent the risks.

b) Entail the public policies and develop the consistent regulations in construction and landscape preservation of the heritage, particularly prioritize: the indicators and limits of the density and height of buildings, rules respecting traditional and cultural values (color, architecture style, special planning, etc.). In addition, there should be regulations on financial duties for local stakeholders to generate the funds for conservation in the areas which are not under direct management of government agencies in charge of heritage. For example, a percentage from transactions of real-estate properties within the protected areas must be reserved for conservation fund.

c) Strengthen the close coordination between the heritage conservation agencies and related government agencies to timely share the information in construction and development plan. Among which, specific duties of management agencies need clarified in the heritage buffer-zones, with priorities

given to the landscape protected areas which are not under the direct management

d) Strictly implement the approved zoning plans and regulations in the exploitation of sand/gravel in Hương River, limestone and minerals; Build hydroelectric plants in Hương River's valley must avoid causing the erosion of river banks and negative impacts on relics of Huế Monuments Complex; Reduce and Stop the exploitation of cement limestone mines and construction materials near cultural and historic monuments in order to protect the fengshui landscape of Heritage Area; Prevent the encroachment and activities causing pollution in Heritage Area.

e) Prioritize the financial resources for the conservation, restoration and enhancement of tangible heritages in urban planning, with the focus given to the completion of restoring the sites which belong to Huế Monuments Complex.

f) Develop a sustainable heritage tourism plan which includes the upgrade of infrastructure, the traffic roads in the adjacent of monuments; Improve and adjust the public facilities, sign boards and community based tourism, ensure local community's benefits in the promotion of heritage.

g) Diversify tourism products which may vary in the following sectors : cultural tourism, relax tourism, medical/health tourism, beach tourism, ecotourism, MICE tourism; Promote craft villages in order to create new tourism attractions reflecting significant cultural values of Huế; Develop new tourism routes to distract visitors from the hotspots in the Citadel and tombs and increase the average lengthstay in Huế region.

## **5.2. Management of environmental impacts**

### ***5.2.1. Objectives***

In order to manage the environmental risks, the socio-economic activities which have potentially negative impacts in Heritage area must be limited and prevented. Key objectives of environmental impacts management have been identified as following:

a) Develop policies and mechanisms encouraging local community in participating in environmental protection activities.

b) Apply the timely obligations for violation cases to effectively control, limit and prevent pollution risks, particularly the risks from daily waste, industrial waste, medical and solid wastes from construction sites, air pollution from traffic activities.

c) Promote communication and educational campaigns to raise public awareness on environment protection; Timely conduct actions in resolving pollution situations ensuring the protection of the fresh and clean environment.

### ***5.2.2. Proposed policies***

To establish a supervision mechanism in order to limit, prevent and resolve the pollution impacts from socio-economic activities. Specific policies have been proposed as following

a) Develop Hué city to be a green and eco-friendly urban centre which will particularly have an environmental friendly system of water supply/discharge and organized traffic.

b) Build the ecological corridor in the city center; Develop the urban public transport to reduce pollution in the urban center as well as in the heritage areas. Purify the urban environment in general and Heritage Area's environment in particular.

c) In long-term, develop renewable energies which will be appropriate to the natural conditions of Hué; Apply policies encouraging the use and production of new energies; various encouraging policies are applied and strengthened to use and produce new energy.

d) Investigate and Control regularly the environmental sanitation inside and outside the relics.

e) Highlight the roles and responsibilities of media agencies in implementing regular entries on raising public awareness in environment protection; Mainstream environment education programs in school agenda and community activities for the young generations.

f) Promote the communication and education programs on building civilized urban lifestyle; promote the campaigns engaging the large public in protecting clean and green environment.

g) Develop and apply the regulations in protecting the environment and preserving heritage values.

### **5.3. Management of Disaster Risks**

Whilst the natural disasters are unlikely to be predicted, key objectives of the Disaster Risks Management must highlight the preparedness in order to minimize the loss of human, properties and environment in any cases of disasters.

#### **5.3.1. Objectives**

The objectives of Disaster Risk management is to ensure that natural disasters would not severely damage the ecological environment, authenticity and the outstanding universal values of the heritage in order to sustainably preserve the heritage

In accordance with the Strategy on climate change adaptability which is reflected in the Prime Minister's Decision number 1183/QĐ-TTg on Aug 30<sup>th</sup> 2012 on the National Target Programs on climate change in period 2012 – 2015, three pillars of actions have been identified: Adaptation; Mitigation; Interdisciplinary policy of climate change and Institutional framework. In particular:

a) Smoothly coordinate the prevention, emergency response and post disaster action in order to ensure the consolidation and authenticity of heritage against natural challenges.

b) Develop prevention measures, taking the prevention a focus in disaster risk management.

c) Develop consistent solutions and actions in emergency response in all the aspects of environment, social environment and human life

d) Highlight the importance of local community, taking this a key in the prevention and post disaster solutions. Promote the roles of communication and

educational campaigns on the public and local community's awareness on about the preparedness, prevention and readiness in confronting natural disasters.

### ***5.3.2. Proposed policies***

a) Prepare and timely prevent the consequences which may be caused by floods on heritage sites. Beware the risk of inundation during the long rain which may cause damages to the relics as well as trees and green vegetation, internal routs within the monument complex.

b) Propose the measures of anti-dampness due to the high humidity which may cause serious damages to heritage buildings, artifacts and historical records. Particularly the attention should be made in the rainy season between September and November.

c) Prevent the damages caused by unusual weather such as storms, tropical low pressure, lightning and thunderstorm; Timely respond to the emergency cases along the river banks and coastal areas such as soil erosion nearby heritage sites

d) Promote researches and draw lessons learnt, local/indigenous experience and knowledge in the adaptation to the climate change and protect the heritage.

đ) Implement the regular restoration and consolidation of the relics in the Heritage Area in order to minimize the risks caused by natural disasters

e) Develop the prevention plans for climate change scenarios in dry season where there are the risks of drought and forest fire. HMCC need to closely coordinate with the Police of Fire Prevention (Brigates) and Emergency Rescue Team, the Committee for Forest Fire Drilling in concerning districts as well as with the Forest Rangers and Forest Caretakers in order to propose emergency actions ensuring the most promptly response to the case of fires.

f) Develop and implement the Disaster risk management plan and introduce, raise awareness on this plan. Keep annual updates of this plan and Establish a Mechanism of Coordination at local level to engage local community in the prevention and post disaster solutions. Every year, strengthen the staff of youth and healthy people to prepare an emergency team which is ready in action in case of disasters.

g) Strengthen the structure of the Provincial Committee for the Prevention of storm and flood; Highlight the roles and legal status of the Committee at all levels, from provincial to local level at commune, ward and town to be ready in emergency response in the heritage areas.

h) Organize trainings on knowledge and skills in response to natural disasters for management personnel, organizations and individuals, community. Develop and improve the capacity for Emergency Teams of HMCC and related government agencies at local level. The trainings must be conducted regularly. Establish the funds and create resources for the post disaster solutions minimizing the loss in environment and human.

#### **5.4. Management of tourism impacts**

##### ***5.4.1. Objectives***

The key objective of tourism impacts management is to ensure that tourism activities will be in compatible with the given heritage condition and its capacity by which the heritage will be preserve authentically and sustainably in the long term. .

In order to achieve the objective mentioned above, there need be an appropriate tourism strategy which balance different tourism segments of the Province in general and of the Complex of Hue Monuments in particular. For instance: Cultural tourism (visiting cultural historic monuments, Festival tourism, spiritual tourism, craft village tourism, gastronomy tourism, Sightseeing tourism, Ethnic Culture Tourism, Medical tourism Sea Tourism, Ecotourism, Relax Tourism, Workshop and Conference Tourism (MICE).

Specific objectives are followings:

a) Attract a reasonable quantity of visitors throughout the year for each heritage site.

b) Propose an adequate visitor management plan in order to prevent and stop negative behaviors which risks to damage heritage environment, including the proposed obligations and condemnations in accordance to the laws.

c) Educate and raise the awareness among visitors on the public roles and responsibilities towards the heritage resources and environment.

d) Encourage the contribution from tourism revenue to conservation activities of cultural values and restoration of cultural and ecological values as well as green tourism development.

#### ***5.4.2. Proposed policies***

In order to achieve those management objectives, specific policies are as followings:

a) Facilitate the quantity of tourists to the heritage sites of the Huế Monument Complex by regulations and promotional programs in cooperation with travel agencies, avoiding the overcrowd at the individual sites. Create the visiting attractions out of the relics to distract the visitors from the City center, especially from the Citadel

b) Introduce the internal regulations in various friendly communication channels to prevent the negative behaviours by visitors. Improve the local community's knowledge and engage them in participating tourism services provision. Create favourable conditions for local people to improve livelihoods through tourism development as well as contribute to sustainable development

c) Improve the quality of tourism facilities in line with the local conditions, ensuring the visitors needs while protecting the heritage and environment.

d) Limit the tourism complex development of large-scaled and high density at heritage sites which have fragile fengshui and natural elements. . Encourage the development of hospitality facilities, tourism attractions and entertainment places as oriented in the General Planing of Tourism Development in Thừa Thiên Huế province in period 2013 – 2030 promulgated by Thừa Thiên Huế People Committee at Decision 1622/ QD-UBND on Aug 26<sup>th</sup> 2013.

đ) Build capacity for tourism personnel who will have the expertise in tourism management as well as heritage guiding, heritage impact assessment and supervision. Develop the professional personnel in tourism and reduce the recruitment of personnel with limited tourism and heritage expertise.

e) Develop and encourage the community based models.

### **5.5. Management of demographic pressures at the heritage sites**

#### ***5.5.1. Objectives***



a) The key objectives are to ensure that the population growth in the heritage area will be well controlled; effectively relocate the residents from the core zone (zone 1) in certain heritage sites; Secure the housed antiquities and artifacts at the heritage sites of the Complex of Hue Monuments.

#### ***5.5.2. Proposed policies***

In order to achieve the overall objectives above, specific policies have been identified:

a) Conduct the relocation plan of the inhabitants in core zone (zone 1) of heritage sites in parallel with the restoration projects. Develop a Plan of relocation and reduce the density of population in the zone 1 of Hué Citadel (four wards of the City center) to the new urban areas with modern and standard infrastructure, integrating the policies encouraging local people's benefits, jobs and income generation

b) Classify the priority of relocation for different groups in the zone 1 of the heritage sites, depending on specific indicators such as: the level of degradation of the monuments, the population density, the living standards of local households, etc. The priority will be given to the households living within the relics

c) Develop the regulations in detail regulating the migration into the heritage areas, including the regulations concerning the informal workers.

d) Enhance the communication and public campaigns to give guidance to the local people living in the area of heritage to follow and respect the law Regarding the preservation and promotion of heritage.

đ) Encourage and support the economic activities of people living in the heritage areas towards the switch onto new decent jobs which are friendly to heritage and community and help local people to share the benefits from heritage preservation.



## CHAPTER 6

### MANAGING AND PROTECTING THE CORE AND BUFFER ZONE OF THE HERITAGE PROPERTY



*Photo 21: Mr. Nguyễn Văn Cao – Chairman of Thua Thien-Hue Provincial People's Committee chaired the Consultation Workshop on the Site Management Plan of the Hue Complex of Monuments with the participation of related government agencies in the Province.*

#### **6.1. The objectives of management and protection of the core and buffer zone of the heritage property**

The awareness and realization of regulations and direction in management of protected zones in heritage sites to be presented below will assist the managers of heritage sites, namely the Huế Monument Conservation Centre in proposing management policies and appropriate development orientation, in order to balance between conservation and development trends in heritage sites.

Based on the zoning of protection areas of both individual monuments and groups of monuments (as per described in the sections 1.2 of Chapter 1), the attributes of the Complex of Huế Monuments (as per identified in Chapter 2) and pursuant to the Law on Cultural Heritage, the Adjusted Planning Framework for the Complex of Huế Monuments in the period 2010-2020 (Decision No.

818/QĐ-TTg issued on June 7, 2010 by the Prime Minister), the orientation for urban expansion as being identified in the Overall Master Plan of Huế City through 2030 and towards 2050 (approved by the Prime Minister at the Decision No 649/QĐ-TTg dated May 6, 2014), overall master plan of landscape area along the Hương River banks from Thuan An Port to Gia Long tomb (Decision No. 1381/QĐ-UBND issued on July 9, 2009 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province) and other related documents; the management of protected zones is regulated in section 6.2 below.

The principal objectives of Management Plan for protected zones in heritage sites include:

a) Protect the originality and authenticity of the architectural structures, historical relics, artistic structures, archaeological sites of the Complex of Huế Monuments.

b) Preserve and Protect the key and typical elements and features of natural, cultural and historical landscapes of the Complex of Huế Monuments, including:

- The elements which contribute to typical natural landscapes of the Complex of Huế such as: mountains, hills, rivers, lakes, forests, green trees, agricultural landscapes, etc.

- The *geomantic* elements of the Complex of Huế Monuments.

- Traditional villages at the heritage sites, craft villages, typical garden houses and intangible cultural values.

c) Provide guidances for tourism development towards the sustainable and balancing development without causing adversely impacts on the natural environment, cultural settings, the historical, architectural and archeological relics of heritage sites.

d) Support local people living within and around heritage sites by creating job opportunities and livelihood improvements in respect of the natural and cultural landscapes; assist local people in preserving and promoting cultural values of local traditions in contribution to the enrichment of Huế cultural values.

e) Engage local people in the development of cultural tourism and enhance the visitors' experience and appreciation of local cultural heritages and community.

f) Develop appropriate policies and regulations to optimize the protection of natural landscapes, historical monuments, traditional architectural and artistic structures of Outstanding Universal Value to enable the research and education of future generations.

## **6.2. Regulations for the management and protection of the core and buffer zone of the heritage property**

### ***6.2.1. Regulations to protect the core zone of the World Heritage property and the zone I of the classified national monuments***

Section 1.2 of Chapter 1 clearly defines “surface area of the World Heritage Site” of single heritage sites and assembly of heritage sites belong to Hué Monuments Complex. Moreover, such single heritage sites and assembly of heritage sites have been classified as national heritages under the provisions of the Law on Cultural Heritage. Therefore, the protection of monuments and heritage sites should abide by the provisions of Article 32 of the Law on Cultural Heritage, as follows: *“Protected areas type I are the ones that own the original components of the monument. Protected areas type I must be protected their status quo in terms of layout and space. Where special construction is required to serve the purpose of protecting and promoting heritage values, the building must be approved in writing by the competent authority who decided the classification of such heritage. The construction of such structures regulated in this clause do not infringe upon the architecture, natural beauty, environment, or ecology of the site”*.

### ***6.2.2. Regulation to protect the buffer zone of the World Heritage property and the buffer zone of the classified national monuments***

The World Heritage buffer zone of Hué Monuments Complex and protected areas type II of the national heritage was assigned to the direct

management of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province under following terms:

- *“Protected areas type II are zones surrounding protected areas type I. Structures may be built in these areas do not infringe upon the architecture, natural beauty, environment, or ecology of the site”.* (Article 32, Law on Cultural Heritage).

- *“Protected areas type II are zones surrounding protected areas type I which are defined to protect the landscape, environment and ecology of the site. Structures may be built in these areas to serve the purpose of protecting and promoting heritage values”.* (Section 2 Article 14 Decree 98/2010/NĐ-CP dated September 21, 2010).

The monument conservation in the area of zone I (core zone) and zone II (buffer zone) must be implemented in type of project that is based on the approved scientific and technical dossiers, as regulated in the Items 17, 19 and 22, Decree No. 70/2012/ND-CP dated September 18, 2012 on the regulation of authority, process and procedures for setting up and approval of the historical, cultural monuments and landscape preservation, and as regulated at the Instruction No. 18/2012/TT-BVHTTDL dated December 28, 2012 on the detailed regulations for the monument preservation and must be signed by the Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism.

In addition, during the management of World Cultural Heritage – Huế Monuments Complex should note the provisions of Section 172 of the Operational Guidelines for Implementation of the World Heritage Convention, as follows: *“The World Heritage Committee invites the States Parties to the Convention to inform the Committee, through the Secretariat, of their intention to undertake or to authorize in an area protected under the Convention major restorations or new constructions which may affect the Outstanding Universal Value of the property. Notice should be given as soon as possible (for instance, before drafting basic documents for specific projects) and before making any decisions that would be difficult to reverse, so that the Committee may assist in*

*seeking appropriate solutions to ensure that the Outstanding Universal Value of the property is fully preserved”.*

### ***6.2.3. Orientation of the management and protection of the spatial settings of the Complex of Huế Monuments***

Huế Monuments Complex is characterized by its scattered monuments and relics across the vast coverage of 4 districts, towns and Huế City of Thừa Thiên Huế province. Most of the important buildings are located along the Hương River with two major areas: the northern bank with the citadel, palaces and royal premises for residence and offices; down South lies temples, pagodas and royal tombs of the Nguyễn emperors among quiet mountainous areas. Therefore, the introduction of regulations and management orientation to protect the spatial distribution of relics along the Hương River belong to Huế Monuments Complex not only to preserve architectural structures which create the Outstanding Universal Value of Huế heritage, but also to protect geomantic elements of landscape being presented in Chapter 2

Moreover, as mentioned in Section 1.2 of Chapter 1, some relics related to history of Nguyễn Dynasty were assigned to the direct management of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre by the People’s Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province, and also the surrounding landscapes and geomantic of those relics must be closely protected, including: An Dinh Palace, Thanh Binh ancestral temple, Van van tomb, Hieu Dong tomb, Co Thanh tomb, Lord Nguyễn Hoang’s royal tombs complex

Recently, during the implementation of the project “Adjusted Master Plan for Huế City until 2030 and vision to 2050” funded by the Korean Government via the Korea International Cooperation Agency (KOICA), the protection of Huế Monuments Complex’s integrity and attributes creating its outstanding universal value has been thoroughly discussed among planning experts, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre’s counterpart and relevant researchers to come up with the orientation in spatial planning and management of landscape and architectural structures along both sides of the Hương River as follows:



*"Orientation in spatial planning along both sides of the Huong River:*

*- The area stretching from Gia Long Tomb to Kim Long is a conservation and restoration area with appropriate control of building structures. This area is reserved for cultural and spiritual activities to promote heritage values in combination with proper tourism activities.*

*- The area from Kim Long to Bao Vinh is a developing area where development is associated to conservation and restoration specific features of the ancient quarter of Huế Citadel.*

*- The area from Bao Vinh to Thuan An estuary is an ecological area for agriculture and villages along the river banks and lagoon, where seaside resorts, lagoon eco-tourism, restaurants or water games may be developed. A service area can be arranged on the western side of Thuan An Port.*

*- Areas along the river banks are mainly reserved for parks and sidewalks combined with height-limited structures to ensure harmonious setting of the surroundings; attention is paid to protection and promotion special values of Bao Vinh ancient quarter.*

*Orientation for spatial management of landscapes and architecture structures:*

*- Northern areas of the Huong River, Huế (Huế Citadel, traditional villages, handicraft villages and a number of other areas):*

*+ The height of buildings inside the Citadel  $\leq 11$  meters.*

*+ For the traditional neighborhoods (Bao Vinh, Kim Long, Gia Hoi), with the ancient buildings or garden houses in the process of repair and renovation it requires appropriate conservation of original structures.*

*+ For craft villages (Phuong Duc, Thanh Tien, Sinh and so on), it should be ensured to maintain the village structure, preserve and upgrade the old age houses and other infrastructure.*

*- Southern areas of the Huong River, Huế City:*

*+ Management of landscape and front view: expanding the front view on the main axis from the Flag pole (Huế Citadel) toward Ngự Bình Mount for an*

*angle of 20 degrees to limit the height of structures; with attention given to the view from southwest region toward the city centre.*

*+ Management of landscape along the river banks: river banks management on both sides (Huong River: 200 meters long; Nhu Y river and An Cuu river 50 meters long each), defining height limit, shape and arrangement (architectural lines) for new construction.*

*+ Management of street settings: develop landscape for streets in city centre, historical streets (streets of Hung Vuong, Hanoi, Le Loi and Dien Bien Phu, etc.), limit structure height and define appropriate architecture.*

*+ Management of existing traditional landscapes: Preserve, restore and rehabilitate traditional structures, areas around historical relics as well as modern structures to create harmonious settings”.*

(extract from the approval Decision No 649/QĐ-TTg dated May 6, 2014 by the Prime Minister regarding adjusted master plan for Huế City until 2030 and vision to 2050).

In addition, several specific options was proposed in the summary report of the adjusted master plan for Huế City until 2030 and vision to 2050 being approved by the Prime Minister in Decision No. 649 / QĐ-TTg on May 6, 2014 , to protect landscape settings around relics and heritage sites of Huế Monuments Complex, such as:

*“- Structures on either sides of the An Cuu river and Bo river are limited its height not exceed 3 floors (or not more than 14 meters high). However, for the part between Bến Ngự and Kho Rền bridges, the limit is 2 floors to ensure the open view toward Ngự Bình Mount..*

*- Structures being built within the corridor of 200 meters wide from the Huong River banks are limited at not more than 4 floors in height.*

*- Any construction of structures on the northern side of the Huong River passing the city of Huế is prohibited, while parks are established along side of the river. The height of structures within the corridor of 100 meters wide from*

*the river banks at Gia Hoi and Kim Long quarters are limited at two floor at most (or 11 meters high).*

*- From Gia Long Royal Tomb toward the western side of Huế City, the height limit is two floors at most”.*

Besides, the regulations and directions are mentioned in Section 3.5.7.2. (Chapter 3) of the Overall master plan of landscape area along the Hương River banks from Thuan An Port to Gia Long tomb of Thừa Thiên Huế province must be fully implemented in order to preserve the natural and cultural landscape, geomantic of the Huế Monuments Complex.

The above-mentioned regulations are concrete grounds for relevant authorities of Thừa Thiên Huế province in processing building permits for new construction and provide guidance for local people to strictly observe this regulation. However, due to the fact that relics and heritage sites of Huế monuments complex are scattered across a wide areas of 4 districts, towns and Huế City, there should be specific protection regulations in place for each relics /or heritage site to ensure an intensive protection of Outstanding Universal Value of heritage sites, especially protecting natural landscapes, geomantic settings of each site or a cluster of neighboring heritage sites, it must be based on the provisions of the Law on Cultural Heritage and the local realities for developing **Protection rules for each relics/heritage sites with the space distributed closely** (hereafter called the Protection rules), as in the case of the "Construction management rules in accordance with the detailed planning of Huế Citadel" issued by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province at Decision No. 2318 / QD-UB dated July 10, 1999. Such protection rules stipulate not only the protection of specific attributes creating outstanding universal value of the World Cultural Heritage being defined in the zoning map for protection in application document, but also protection the surrounding landscapes and geomantic space settings at each site of Huế monuments complex. Especially, the further it must promptly research, improve this **Protection Rules** while the

2<sup>nd</sup> re-nomination documents of Huế Monuments Complex as the World Cultural Heritage yet to be implemented.

In future, KOICA will continue to support Thừa Thiên Huế province in carrying out researches and developing detailed plans on either sides of the Hương River in an attempt to protect the cultural and historical values, ecology, geomantic settings of the World Heritage Complex of Huế as well as both sides of the river. Upon its implementation, the project will bring a good opportunity to make use of planning outputs to develop *Statutes* to protect the World Heritage Complex of Huế later on.



## CHAPTER 7

### MONITORING

#### 7.1. Principal indicators to monitor the state of conservation

*(Table 4 below provides a summary of monitoring factors, indicators and measures).*

The indicators for the measurement and assessment of the property's conservation status are based on the data collected from surveys, analysis and evaluation of the factors that create the value, integrity and authenticity of the heritage sites. These cover the value of traditional architectural features of the relics, geomantic settings at heritage sites, environment, natural landscapes and values of culture, history and archeology.

Key indicators include:

- *The existing structures on the ground related to the Nguyễn Dynasty:*  
There remain a great deal of fortresses, palaces, temples, shrines, tombs and other relics in heritage sites associated to the history of the Nguyễn Dynasty. The protection of historical originality, the authenticity of traditional architectural features and their integrity, including their appearance, durability and stability to the effects of environmental or human activities should always be cautiously managed and closely monitored.

Indicator: the physical or biological damages can be observed from the external appearance of structures; renovations, rehabilitations, restoration, rebuild or modification of improper architectural structures.

- *The archaeological remnants of structures associated to the history of the Nguyễn Dynasty:* Up to now, the buildings in Huế Monuments Complex being over two-century old age have undergone severe destruction by the wars and harsh weather conditions, particularly during the period of 1945 – 1975. Hundreds of buildings were damaged and collapsed leaving only the bare foundation on the ground. Since 1975, some of them have been archaeologically excavated to serve the purpose of restoration, rehabilitation. Some others were

investigated, excavated or filled with sand to preserve the status quo. The rest is also planned to conduct surveys or excavations in the years to come to complete scientific grounds for restoration their original architectural structures. The protection of heritage sites under archaeological surveys against environmental impact or new construction by local people should be planned and closely monitored.

Indicator: visible disruption from archaeological sites such as the loss or unauthorized removal of artifacts.

- *Population growth, urbanization and the development of transport infrastructure*: The population is growing rapidly in the city of Huế and neighboring districts and towns of Hương Trà, Hương Thủy, Phú Vang along with the expansion of urbanization, tourist services, vehicles and transportation infrastructure. These result in constant pressure on the relics of Huế Monuments Complex, either the land demand for housing developments, industrial parks or new urban areas and attached infrastructure. A proper protection zoning of heritage sites and buffer zones would be the best way to reduce this pressure.

Indicator: Inconsistent construction of housing, hotel and transportation around heritage sites and buffer zones.

- *Erosion, riverbank landslides and the ecological environment at heritage sites*: Instream sand mining or limestone mining near heritage sites still occur. This can lead to erosion and landslides on river banks and affect relics along the river as well as threaten the ecological environment of heritage sites. The monitoring of environmental impact is critical.

Indicator: excessive mining of limestone, the severity of erosion, landslides on river banks especially during the rainy and flood season.

- *The impact of air and water pollution on rivers, canals, ponds, lakes*: The effects of pollution may originate outside or inside the heritage sites. Air pollution derives from residential areas or industrial zones nearby. Water pollution comes from factories by the river, from domestic sewage and garbage,

solid waste of tourists or the reclamation and encroachment of rivers, canals, ponds and lakes in the heritage sites.

Indicator: visible changes of the surface area of rivers, ponds and lakes being filled, or deterioration of air and water quality.

- *The impact of tourism activities and development of tourism infrastructure*: As stated above, the province of Thừa Thiên Huế province received 2.6 million tourists in 2013, of which 2,100,000 tourists visited relics in Huế monuments Complex. It is projected that by 2020, the number of visitors to Thừa Thiên Huế province in general and Huế Monuments Complex in particular by 2020 will double the number of visitors in 2013 and by 2030 the increase may be 4,5 times higher. This will result in increasing pressure on the environment from litter, pollution to infrastructure development. Uncontrolled growth of tourist flow and inefficient management can lead to capacity overload both on physical and social perspectives of heritage sites, then diminishing visitors' satisfaction. These issues need to be surveyed and monitored regularly.

Indicator: evidence of pollutants, wastes, or their impacts, unexpected development of tourism infrastructure, indications of tourist overcrowding.

- *Operation of inhabitants in heritage sites*: As stated in Section 4.1.2, it is estimated that there are over 80,000 inhabitants living inside the Citadel, and another 20,000 ones are living in protection zones type I and type II of heritage sites nearby the Citadel. Besides, a number of about 30,000 to 40,000 people live in protection zones type I and type II, bringing the total number of people living in the heritage sites of Huế to 130,000 to 140,000 people, accounting for nearly one third of the population of Huế city. The activities of inhabitants here as well as other social - economic development projects such as housing construction, infrastructure development and demographic change are indicators to be monitored

Indicator: the population growth together with unexpected activities or events can adversely affect cultural and natural values of heritage sites.



- *Forests and vegetation in and around heritage sites:* As pointed out in Section 3.5.2, there exists a large number of forests and trees in and around many relics of Huế Monuments Complex. The vegetation coverage is commonly in its natural state and in good condition. It requires close monitoring to ensure no disturbance or loss or damages due to human activities, on-purpose fires, pollution and climate change.

Indicator: The deterioration of vegetation or forest coverage.

**Table 4: Monitoring indicators for tracking The state of conservation at the Huế Monuments Complex**

<b>Object</b>	<b>Indicator(s)</b>	<b>Reporting period</b>	<b>Responsible agency or record keeper</b>
On-ground existing structures associated to the Nguyễn Dynasty	Visible physical or biological damages on the structure and surface of the buildings; renovations, rehabilitations, restorations or structural modifications of buildings	Annually or when incident being observed or reported	- Huế Monuments Conservation Centre. - Dept. of Cultural Heritage.
The archaeological remnants of structures associated to the history of the Nguyễn Dynasty	Visible disruption from archaeological sites such as the loss or unauthorized removal of artifacts	Annually or when incident being observed or reported	- Huế Monuments Conservation Centre - Dept. of Cultural Heritage. - Dept. of Culture, Sports & Tourism.
Population growth, urbanization and the development of transport infrastructure	Inconsistent construction of housing, hotel and transportation around heritage sites and buffer zones.	Annually	- Huế Monuments Conservation Centre. - Dept of Construction - Transportation Dept.
Erosion, riverbank landslides and	Excessive mining of limestone, the severity of erosion, landslides on	Annually or when incident	- Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

the ecological environment at heritage sites	river banks especially during the rainy and flood season.	being observed or reported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Dept. of Natural Resources and Environment.</li> <li>- Dept. of Agriculture &amp; Rural Development.</li> <li>- Dept. of Construction</li> </ul>
The impact of air and water pollution on rivers, canals, ponds, lakes	Visible changes of the surface area of rivers, ponds and lakes being filled, or deterioration of air and water quality.	Annually	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Hué Monuments Conservation Centre.</li> <li>- Dept. of Natural Resources and Environment.</li> <li>- Dept. of Agriculture &amp; Rural Development.</li> </ul>
The impact of tourism activities and development of tourism infrastructure	Evidence of pollutants, wastes, or their impacts, unexpected development of tourism infrastructure, indications of tourist overcrowding.	Every six months	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Hué Monuments Conservation Centre.</li> <li>- Dept. of Culture, Sports &amp; Tourism.</li> <li>- Dept. of Cultural Heritage</li> </ul>
Operation of inhabitants in heritage sites	The population growth together with unexpected activities or events can adversely affect cultural and natural values of heritage sites.	Every 6 months or when incident being observed or reported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Hué Monuments Conservation Centre.</li> <li>- Dept. of Construction</li> <li>- Dept. of Natural Resources and Environment.</li> <li>- Dept. of Agriculture &amp; Rural Development.</li> <li>- Related People's Committees of districts, towns, Hué City and wards/communes</li> </ul>
Forests and	The deterioration of	Annually	

vegetation in and around heritage sites	vegetation or forest coverage.		- Huế Monuments Conservation Centre. - Dept. of Agriculture & Rural Development.
---	--------------------------------	--	---

## 7.2. Monitoring mechanism

The above main indicators for monitoring the conservation status are undertaken periodically by relevant authorities at national and provincial levels as follows:

- The responsible agency at national level: Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism.
- The responsible agency at provincial level: People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province.
- Local administrator taking charge of direct management and supervision: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.
- Relevant stakeholders involving in supervising the state of conservation of architectural monuments, archaeological remnants: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism, Department of Cultural Heritage (Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism).
- The supervisory bodies involved in population growth, urbanization and transport infrastructure: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Construction, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Transportation, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Planning and Investment, People's Committees of Huế City, Hương Thủy town, Hương Trà town and Phú Vang district.
- The supervisory authorities involved in land resources, mountains, rivers, seas, streams, ponds, lakes: Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Agriculture and Rural Development, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Natural Resources and Environment, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- The supervisory bodies involved in soil erosion, landslides along the river banks, and ecological environment at heritage sites: Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Agriculture and Rural Development, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Natural Resources and Environment, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Construction, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- The supervisory bodies involved in impacts of air pollution and water pollution in rivers, canals, ponds and lakes: Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Natural Resources and Environment, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Agriculture and Rural Development, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- The supervisory bodies involved in tourism activities, developing tourism infrastructure: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Planning and Investment.

- The supervisory bodies involved in monitoring activities of residents in heritage sites: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre; Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Construction; Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism; Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Natural Resources and Environment; Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Agriculture and Rural Development, People's Committees of districts, towns, Huế city, wards and communes where heritages are situated.

- The agencies involved in monitoring of forests and vegetation in and around heritage sites: Huế Monuments Conservation Centre; Department of Agriculture and Rural Development in Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- The agencies involved in monitoring the risk of incidents of floods, hurricanes, landslides, lightning, fire: Thừa Thiên Huế's Committee for Flood and Storm Prevention and Control and Committee for Search and Rescue, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Agriculture and Rural Development, Thừa Thiên Huế Department of Natural Resources and Environment, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

### **7.3. Technical equipment for monitoring**

The GIS system which incorporates the 3D maps of the province is also capable to provide the satellite images and aerial photos for the analysis, detection and supervision of the topographical changes, land use, green belts and new construction units in the zone II and the areas in the adjacent of the zone II.

## **CHAPTER 8**

### **ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE OF HUẾ MONUMENTS CONSERVATION CENTRE AND THE ORIENTATION OF DEVELOPMENT**

#### **8.1. Existing organizational structure of the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre**

Huế Monuments Conservation Centre was founded on June 10, 1982. Directly under the control of the Ministry of Culture and Information (now known as the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism), the Centre is responsible for managing, preserving and enhancing values of Huế Monuments Complex and Huế Court Music - “Masterpiece of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity”.

The Centre includes 12 departments, and has 750 employees, among which 300 staff are graduates or post-graduates in such disciplines as architecture, construction, arts, history, literature, foreign languages, law, Han-Nom and so forth. A good number of staff hold doctor and master degree from well-known international academic institutions.

In order to catch up with the new development period, The Provincial People’s Committee issued the Decision no.2062/QĐ-UBND dated 29/10/2010 regulating the functions, duties, responsibilities and organizational structure of the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre (hereafter referred to as the Decision no.2062/QĐ-UBND). According to which, the Centre is mandated to propose and assist the Provincial People’s Committee in functioning the management, protection, restoration and promotion of Huế cultural heritage; including the preservation and promotion of both tangible and intangible cultural heritage, landscape heritage which are attached to the monuments. The functions and duties are reflected in 17 focus areas of tasks.

The Centre has a structural organization including the directorate (Director and 3 deputy directors) and 12 departments as follows:

1. The Administrative department: 38 staff
2. The Planning and Finance: 45 staff
3. The research department: 37 staff
4. The Landscape and Environment department: 91 staff
5. The cooperation and foreign affairs department: 14 staff
6. The tourist guide department: 64 staff
7. The security department: 173 staff
8. The consultancy Board for Huế monument conservation: 20 staff
9. The Project Management Board: 16 staff
10. The Royal Theatre of Traditional Arts: 172 staff
11. The Huế Museum of Royal Antiquities: 48 staff
12. The Centre for Service Development of Huế monuments: 58 staff

Depending on the function, responsibilities of each division and units, the Center may have specific technical groups. The structure of permanent staff members and financial mechanism follow the instructions of the Decree no.43/2006/NĐ-CP dated 25/4/2006 by the Government regulating the autonomous right and system of public service agencies.

Under the Center, there are also a number of public services agencies which also have their own legal status, stamps and bank accounts (third level public service agencies) such as:

- Huế Royal Traditional Arts Theatre;
- Project Management Board of Huế Monuments;
- Huế Royal Antiquities Museum
- Committee for Consultancy of Huế Monuments Conservation
- Huế Center for Monuments Services Development.

Additionally, there is one more unit belonging to Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, the Joint-Stock Company for Huế monument restoration (32 staff) and hundreds of labours who work in the above departments in contract.

The functions, tasks and rights of Huế Monuments Conservations Centre were regulated in the Decision 2062/ QĐ-UBND as follows:

*1) Proposing the process and norm of the conservation, renovation and restoration of the historic and cultural relics; setting up the standard conservation norm in accordance with the international conventions that Vietnam had ratified and in accordance with the legal regulation of Socialist Republic of Vietnam; applying the appropriate technology in conservation, renovation and restoration; making consultation and inspecting the construction process to ensure the progress and conservation principles;*

*2) Giving professional advice, making the investigation and monitoring the implementation, setting up the project, managing and conducting the restoration projects of cultural and historic buildings under the law and taking the responsibility for the matters of technique, fine arts and quality of the project.*

*3) Building up the long-term, mid-term and short-term plan of the Centre, obtaining the necessary approvals by the relevant authorities; cooperating with relevant bodies during the implementation.*

*4) Conducting the management of planning, finance, basic construction investment in the field of monument restoration according to the current regulations.*

*5) Doing research, making collection and archives of scientific materials for the conservation, rehabilitation and restoration of the monuments; simultaneously, enriching the cultural heritage' values of Huế.*

*6) Making the cooperation with other organizations to do research on cultural values, urban landscape and natural environment associated with the monuments in order to preserve the traditional cultural identity and enhance the cultural enjoyment of people;*

*7) Doing research and making collection to preserve and promote the intangible cultural values, Huế royal culture, contributing to the diversity of the royal culture in order to enhance the cultural enjoyment of people, the socio-economic development and tourist service of the province;*



8) *Implementing the international cooperation, especially with UNESCO, taking advantages of the international cooperation and assistance from governments, NGOs and foreign individuals; managing and using effectively all the budget sources according to regulations.*

9) *Doing maintenance, research and collection of exhibits at the monuments, organizing the itinerate exhibitions on request.*

10) *Making guidance and giving interpretation for visitors at Hué monuments;*

11) *Managing and protecting the complex of authorized monuments, movable and immovable properties, preventing from vandalism, cooperating with local government and relevant bodies to call upon people to participate in the monument conservation process, coming up the socialization of monument protection and restoration;*

12) *Setting up the training and capacity building plan for the cultural heritage conservation, step-by-step improving the professional ability of the staffs;*

13) *Exploiting and promoting the economic potential of Hué monument complex by appropriate form in order to increase the budgetary income.*

14) *Ensuring the hygienic cultural landscape environment at the monuments.*

15) *Managing the professional activities, budget, property, facilities and personnel under the assignment of Provincial People's Committee and the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism.*

16) *Reporting all the information periodically and in unscheduled cases during the implementation process according to the current regulations.*

17) *Conducting other commissions assigned by the Provincial People's Committee.*

In past years, with the support of the Vietnamese government together with individuals from national and international organizations, especially those concerned with improving knowledge and standards, Hué Monuments

Conservation Centre has made outstanding achievements. Approximately 100 monuments and structures of different levels of preservation have been fully and partly restored; over 20 workshops of both national and international significance were successfully held. In addition, the Centre published nearly thirty volumes of books and proceedings; conducted much research of ministry and discipline level that helped to affirm its role and position in the field of preservation; organized hundreds of Nha Nhac performances; mounted tens of exhibitions about Huế's cultural heritage, both in Vietnam and in overseas countries. Furthermore, the Centre compiled two dossiers to submit UNESCO for the recognition of Huế monument complex as a *World Cultural Heritage Site* (December 11, 1993) and also on Court Music as a *Masterpiece of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity*; collaborated with tens of organisations, institutes and universities in Vietnam and in other countries for the purposes of research and education; and cooperated with international organizations to implement many plans for the high quality conservation and restoration of local relics. Additionally, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre has published quarterly newsletters every year.

To serve the relic preservation and restoration efficiently, many kinds of traditional handicrafts, essential to such restoration, have been revived. The traditional materials workshop at the Centre (presently called Huế Monuments Restoration Joint-stock Company) has successfully produced and provided such enameled tiles as *Thanh Luu Ly* and *Hoang Luu Ly* for over 35,000m<sup>2</sup> of palace roofing. Other traditional crafts, namely gilding, painting, plastering, porcelain repairs, carpentry, manufacture of enamelled bronze items, traditional bronze casting, and traditional handicraft masters have been supported to preserve and develop their skills in accordance with the needs of preservation orientation and to achieve practical effects and outcomes.

Besides the preservation of material heritage, the conservation of intangible heritage artifacts has gradually increased. From the year of establishment (1994), Huế Traditional Royal Theatre of Art presently involves

100 actors, actresses, instrumentalists who were professionally trained and are knowledgeable employees. In addition, the Theatre also cooperates with researchers, prestigious and experienced masters and experts. Approximately 40 pieces of court music have been collected and unique court dances have been reconstructed. Next, the Theatre aims to join many celebrated domestic and international festivals.

Understanding of Huế heritage preservation and the enhancement of Huế cultural heritage have been strengthened by competitions to introduce Huế relics to students and the youth from all provincial companies. These activities have included children's drawing competition about Huế relics, activities which encourage people to collect documents together with artifacts relating to relics, the collection of data from artisans and living witnesses who used to work at relic sites. Moreover, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre has free admission days to increase public cultural enjoyment on the National Day of Socialist Republic of Vietnam (September 2<sup>nd</sup>) and the first day of every lunar new year. Duyet Thi Duong Royal Theatre organizes daily special traditional performances of well-trained artists to interest tourists and enrich their sight-seeing experience. At the 2006 Huế Festival, the Centre held *The Royal Palace By Night* galas inside the Citadel, and then continued to hold the performance in the following months. In 2006 the *Nam Giao Sacrifice* ceremony and the *Successful Candidates Proclamation* were first revived after nearly a century of absence. Those three remarkable events during Huế Festival were greatly appreciated.

As a master in cultural heritage preservation and restoration, the Centre was assigned the task of calculating the annual income and expenses from relic entrance ticket fees, and permitted to take about 40% of its total turnover (approximately 20 billions VND) in addition to capital from the Central Government together with the international financial support for relic preservation and restoration.

In order to promote the value of the Complex of Huế Monuments, the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee has approved the project on the development of services until 2020 by the Decision No. 2295/QĐ-UBND dated December 5, 2012. This Decision allows the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre implement services for tourism in the area of heritage from 2013 onwards to attract more visitors and increase the annual income for the re-investment into the heritage conservation. This project aims at building Huế heritage sites as the attractive destination among the series of World Heritage properties in the Central of Vietnam and in the whole country. Many performances of the court music have been organized at the royal theatres for visitors. Many activities including various exhibitions have been implemented to revive the living space in royal palaces and helped enrich the experience of tourists in their visit to Huế heritage. It can be seen that the combination between the services for tourists and the preservation of tangible and intangible heritage value is the best solution to develop the tourism effectively at the same time with the preservation of heritage property in which the heritage acts the active role in the present context with its educational function and help to improve the quality of cultural life, develop the local economy and get benefit to preserve well the heritage. In addition, the promotion of heritage value also facilitate the revival of handicrafts, rituals and traditional arts. The bronze casting, lacquering, fine art product making, kite making, the traditional ao dai making, conical hat making, sesame candy making, Huế traditional cuisine, Huế folk songs, etc. have been well preserved and strongly developed to meet the demand of tourism.

Great efforts on the part of the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre have resulted in significant achievements. The number of tourists visiting relic sites increases steadily year by year. From 1996 to 2014, the Centre received millions of tourists from all over the world. In 2014, it welcomed nearly 1 million foreign visitors and more than 1 million domestic visitors, the income from which was

up to more than 140 billions VND, contributing remarkably to the budget for the heritage restoration and development of heritage values.

However, in order to further improve local living standards based on cultural heritages, the Huế Monuments Conservation Center is required to study and develop diversified tourism products towards the promotion of community based tourism activities and generate more jobs and incomes for local residents living around the heritage sites.

During its past 32 years since the establishment, the Huế Monuments Conservation Center has proved its roles both in domestic and international grounds regarding the preservation and promotion of Huế cultural heritage, including all tangible, intangible and landscape heritage values and become a leading agency in the preservation and promotion of cultural heritage. The achievements have been evidenced in a good number of awards granted by the Government of Vietnam and ministries.



*Photo 22: Ms. Katherine Muller-Marin – Head of UNESCO Office in Viet Nam delivered a speech at the 30<sup>th</sup> Establishment Anniversary Ceremony of the Hue Monuments Conservation Center (1982 – 2012).*

## **8.2. Future orientation of the Centre**

In order to strengthen the management capacity and research capacity in historic conservation and archaeological studies of World Cultural Heritage (both tangible and intangible), so as the preservation of landscapes attached to the monuments, the, Hué Monuments Conservation Center plans to cooperate with related government agencies to develop a Proposal which will be submitted to the authorities to regulate additional functions and duties, together with an accordingly organizational structure which can help to maximize the capacity of the existing personnel, particularly in the areas of heritage preservation and cultural services, towards the vision of a professional organization at international level in heritage preservation.

According to which, the Hué Monuments Conservation Center will formulate and strengthen research and technical departments such as the Center for Research on Keeping and Restoration which will focus on the maintenance and restoration of antiquities, artifacts and architectural materials assisiting the conservation works, so as other technical departments.

The development and implementation of this Proposal would certainly contribute to strengthening the in-depth research and professional technical investment in the preservation of the Complex of Hue Monuments World Heritage as well as the Hué Royal Music Nha Nhac of Viet Nam – which was inscribed in the Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity. The proposed restructure would also maximize the potentials of the existing technical personnel of the Hué Monuments Conservation Centre and shall be in line with the UNESCO recommendations for the improvement of the Centre, turning it into a Regional Center of Excellence for Conservation in the Asia – Pacific, particularly in the research, training and technology transfer in the areas of heritage preservation, including the preservation of wooden structure.

In order to achieve these goals and objectives as well as effectively implement the Management Plan, it is necessary to improve the personnel of the

Center both in quantity and technical qualifications ensuring the in-depth and professional research to preserve the values of the Complex of Huế Monuments. This would be an essential foundation for the preservation, management and promotion of the heritage. The adequate information and understanding of the monuments as well as of the appropriate exploration and use of heritage are indispensable information in heritage management. The adequate study and assessment of historical, architectural and landscape values are keys to the management process. Other information relates to the environment, land use, economic trends, tourism impacts as well as many other external factors which have potential impacts on the heritage also need examination. Particularly, the study on conservation techniques of architectural buildings, protection of monuments and artifacts must be standardized at both national and regional levels.

## **CHAPTER 9**

### **ACTION PLAN FOR THE PERIOD 2015–2020 AND ORIENTATION OF MANAGEMENT PLAN UNTIL 2030**

#### **9.1. Updating the Management Plan**

The work plan for the first phase, 2015-2020, is outlined in Chapter 9.2 below. During this period the Management Plan will be revised to include the objectives and activities for the next 5-year phase, 2021-2025, as outlined in Chapters 5 and 6. The updated Management Plan will be approved by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee in 2021. The process of plan revision, approval and implementation will be repeated for the 2026-2030 and subsequent phases in order to achieve a long-term strategy of effective site management to protect the Outstanding Universal Value of the Complex of Huế Monuments World Heritage property.

#### **9.2. Action Plan, 2015-2020**

Based on the strategic targets of the World Heritage Committee for the conservation of World Heritage stipulated at Paragraph 26 of the *Guidelines for the implementation of the World Heritage Convention*, and on the orientation of the planning in the period 2015-2020 that was identified in the revised planning of conservation and promotion of the Huế monuments' Outstanding Universal Value in the period 2010-2020 and reflected in Plan No.35/KH-UBND dated May 13, 2011, the Action Plan for the conservation of the Complex of Huế monuments in the period 2015-2020 includes the implementation of the following projects.

##### ***9.2.1. Conservation and restoration of World Heritage property***

In order to achieve effective restoration and rehabilitation of the relics in the Imperial City and elsewhere in the Huế Monuments Complex, the following tasks will be undertaken:

- Research and creation of a conservation files for each set of relics.



- Prioritization and implementation of high priority works using scientific methods.

- For constructions that have been lost or of which only traces remain, archaeological excavation will be undertaken, a site file for their foundations and required conservation will be created, and interpretation panels will be developed to provide information to visitors.

- Works to be undertaken will include:

- The rehabilitation of palaces in the Forbidden City: Can Chanh Palace, Can Thanh Palace, Khon Thai Residence, Kien Trung Pavilion.

- The restoration of Huế Citadel's Rampart, Defensive Moat System (Ho Thanh Hao), bridges, fortress, etc.

- The complete restoration and renovation of the Huế Citadel's water system, the landscapes and royal gardens, and infrastructure at the various mausoleums.

- The complete restoration of the Security Council (Tam Toa), Tang Tho Pavilion (Royal Library), Long An Palace, An Dinh Palace and the Huế Royal Antiquities Museum for exhibition of the antiquities collection, thereby creating more attractions within the Citadel and allowing for a broader distribution of tourists as a key element in a Visitor Management Strategy.

- The complete restoration of the Nam Giao Esplanade and the Xa Tac Esplanade and the development inside the Trai Cung of a museum exhibition dealing with the Nam Giao Sacrifice Ceremony, again creating another visitor attraction.

- The restoration of Minh Mạng, Thiệu Trị, Tự Đức, Khải Định, Dục Đức imperial mausoleums and the Nguyễn seigneurs' mausoleum.

The restoration and enhancement of monument values at the Tran Binh Bastion, Tran Hai Rampart, Thiên Mụ Pagoda, Hòn Chén Temple and Hai Van Gate. ...*(See Annex no. 2: Tentative Public Investment Plan in medium term in conservation and restoration of the Complex of Huế monuments in the period 2016 - 2020).*

- The investigation, archaeological excavation, creation of a preservation file in order to foundation conservation and erecting instruction board on each constructions that was lost or only traces remained . *(See Annex no. 2: Tentative Public Investment Plan in medium term in conservation and restoration of the Complex of Huế monuments in the period 2016 – 2020 and the Plan no. 35/KH-UBND dated 13/5/2011 of the Thừa Thiên Huế People’s Committee in the implementation of the Decision no.818/QĐ-TTg dated 07/6/2010 of the Prime Minister approving the Adjusted Master Plan on the preservation and promotion of heritage values of the Huế monuments in the period 2010-2020 in the List of Reference no.13).*

### ***9.2.2. Safeguarding intangible heritage values***

In recognition of the importance of intangible heritage values to the overall Outstanding Universal Value of the Complex of Huế Monuments World Heritage property, the Action Plan will undertake the following activities:

- Establish and revive the Royal Library, develop it into an archive center of rare and precious documentation (where original documents will be kept and preserved with advanced technology) opened to researchers and concerned visitors.

- Study and restore the musical instruments, costumes for musicians and singers of the Huế Royal Nha Nhac Orchestra.

- Develop and build up a nomination file for the Huế Royal poems and literal works to enlist in the World Memory Program.

*(See Annex no.3: List of several works in the Management Plan of the Complex of Huế Monuments until 2020).*

### ***9.2.3. Strengthen the technical capacity of the Huế Royal Antiquities Museum***

- Upgrade the Huế Royal Antiquities Museum to the national first class specialized museum; Organize thematic exhibitions in the Royal Security Council, Dien Tho Palace and in other palaces, vividly reflecting the

monarchical life to help the public better understand the culture and history under the Nguyen Dynasty.

- Establish a Center for Research and Maintenance of artifacts and antiquities which will be placed under the Huế Royal Antiquities Museum. This Center will also be mandated to conduct researches and develop promotional materials with reliable information of antiquities and relics.

- Conduct research on legal procedures for the identification of significant artifacts and antiquities of the Museum;

- Implement the project on registration of all objects of the Museum with a new registration card system monitored by a new management software.

- Develop a project on the protection of all antiquities of kept in all monuments, exhibition house and museums of the Hue Monument Conservation Centre, giving special attention and investment to the automatic surveillance system which effectively prevents the risks of thefts.

- Prepare a collection of the objects and images needed for the proposed national and international exhibitions to promote the cultural heritage values of Huế and attract tourists.

- Implement the project on the Exhibition of Royal life and high ranking monarchical families in the courtyard of the Huế Royal Antiquities Museum.

- Implement the restoration project of decorative porcelain for exhibition at the following monuments: Thế Miếu Temple, Trường Sanh residence and Biểu Đức palace (imperial tomb of Thiệu Trị).

- Complete the exhibition on Nam Giao Sacrifice Ceremony at Trai Cung.

- Organize exhibitions on the Royal Arena (Hổ Quyền) and temple of Roaring Elephant (Voi Ré).

- Establish a special exhibition on the Nguyễn dynasty's system of competitive examinations, to be displayed at Te Tuu House, Huế's former Royal University (Quoc Tu Giam), and a second special exhibition focused on military careers and the military competition under Nguyễn times, to be shown as Vo Thanh, after these two constructions have been restored.

#### ***9.2.4. Preservation of urban and natural landscape features***

In order to protect and enhance the environment surrounding the heritage relics, the Action Plan will:

- Making a plan to keep clean the buildings, prevent from the wild plant growing and tree collapse.
- Investigate and control harmful insects and protect the water environment in the area of heritage sites.
- Plan a system for the preservation of trees in the heritage area and build up a nursery garden near the temple of Confucius.
- Restore the royal gardens in the heritage area (such as Co Ha garden, Thieu Phuong garden, etc.), breed the traditional ornamental fish, planting trees, and renovate the scenery of heritage sites.
- Renovate the water surface landscape and collect flower seeds, ornamental plants, and precious orchids.

#### ***9.2.5. Heritage zoning, clearance and resettlement***

Under the Action Plan the following activities will be undertaken to strengthen the protected zones (core and buffer), including provision of compensation where it is necessary under the National Law on Cultural Heritage to resettle occupants from the heritage zones:

- Complete the procedures for the land use rights and the associated real estate at some relics that have not yet been granted the certificate.
- Make a plan for the removal and resettlement of households in the area of zone I (core zone) of Huế Citadel (933 households), Long An palace (18), Tang Tho pavilion – Hộc Hải lake (74), Gia Long Mausoleum (25), Van Mieu – Vo Mieu (5), Tiger Arena – Elephant Trumpeted (20), Security Council (Tam Toa) (2), Tịnh Tâm lake (86), Xien Vo Tu (11), Minh Mạng Mausoleum (23), Tu Cung's souvenir House (2), Thiệu Trị Mausoleum (43), Tự Đức Mausoleum (44), Khải Định Mausoleum (2), Dục Đức Mausoleum (81), An Dinh palace (15), Do Thanh Hoang Temple (10), Six Ministry (212), Thiên Mụ Pagoda (36),

Tran Hai Thanh Rampart (06), Quoc Tu Giam – Di Luan Duong (30), Nam Giao Esplanade (112).

- Ensure an effective yet fair and sensitive resettlement policy for households living in the area of heritage in order to facilitate and speed up this process so that the heritage restoration and preservation project can be started soon and achieve the best results. Simultaneously, it is necessary to follow up the resettlement process in order to make sure that the essential infrastructure, health care station and schools are adequate for the resettled households.

- Keep regular control on the construction and renovation of buildings or infrastructure within the zoning area through GIS or on-site inspection, aerial or satellite photos in order to give the appropriate guidance to the involved organizations or individuals.

- Provide the consultancy services in design, restoration of residential buildings in compatible with the regulations and architecture of heritage area. (See **Annex no. 3:** Proposed public investment in medium term in the restoration of the Complex of Huế Monuments in the period 2016 – 2020)

#### ***9.2.6. Other Action Plan activities***

- Do the necessary research and identifying the related site(s) to develop a re-nomination dossier for the extended Huế Monuments Complex to be submitted to the World Heritage Committee in the coming years. This will include setting up GIS maps of the core and buffer zones of the monuments. These maps will be integrated into the provincial database system so that the provincial authorities can share information and protect the heritage property more effectively.

Undertake necessary activities to reduce the environmental impacts on the World Heritage property as defined in the documents promulgated by People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province such as Decision No. 1065/QĐ-UBND dated 13/6/2012 on the collection and treatment of hard waste; Decision No. 10/2010/QĐ-UBND dated 22/3/2010 on the environmental hygiene for tourism activities in Hương River; Decision No. 371/QĐ-UBND dated 21/01/2013 on

building a civilized lifestyle in the urban area and promoting and keeping the environment fresh and clean in Huế City, as regulated in the Instruction No. 24-CT/TU dated August 8, 2012 by the Provincial Committee of the Party on Building up the Urban Civilized lifestyle, pushing up the protection of green, clean and nice environment scenery in Thừa Thiên Huế province.

- Carry out an action plan for tourism management and development in the Complex of Huế Monuments property based on Decision No. 1622 / QĐ-PPC dated August 26, 2013 approved by People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province and in line with the Master Plan for Tourism Development in Thừa Thiên Huế for the period 2013-2030.

- Build up and carry out a capacity-building project for staff of the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, including organizational upgrading of the HMCC to become the Huế Heritage Conservation Research Institute as outlined in Chapter 8.2.

- Improve the quality of services for tourists at the World Heritage property's sites in order to achieve the sustainable development of tourism.

- Strengthen promotional and educational activities for raising the awareness and a sense of responsibility among state officials and all walks of life in order to mobilize their contribution to the preservation and promotion of the cultural heritage value through the implementation of the management plan; disseminating information to enhance the local community's awareness of the property's Outstanding Universal Value and other heritage values, the judiciary regulations for relic preservation, climate change issues and other threats to Huế Monuments Complex and the necessary protection measures.

- Apply advanced technology and new techniques in the dissemination of heritage values, such as 3D film shows and light and audio reproduction of the daily life in the old days at the heritage.

- Implement programs and projects to develop employment opportunities and proper careers in or adjacent to the heritage area in line with provincial strategy and policy. Note that currently under way is the project of the Craft

Village planning combined with services for tourists at Thuy Xuan district provided by Huế city government.

### **9.3. Budget for the Implementation of the Management Plan**

The budget for the proposed 2015-2020 activities was identified in the *Planning of preservation and promotion of Huế monument value in the period 2010-2020* and the Plan No. 35/KH-UBND dated May 13, 2011 approved by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee to implement the Decision 818/QĐ-TTg dated June 7, 2010 on approval of the *Planning of preservation and promotion of Huế monument value in the period 2010-2020*. It will come from the following sources:

- National government (culture-targeted funding support, national culture-targeted program in culture, treasury bills).
- Local government (capital from Thừa Thiên Huế government, annual revenue of Huế heritage property admission and other legal capital sources)
- Funding, ODA and other legal contributions from national and international sources.

(Plan No. 35/KH-UBND dated may 13, 2011 by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee to implement the Decision No. 818/QĐ-TTg dated June 7, 2010 by the Prime Minister on the *Planning of preservation and promotion of Huế monument value in the period 2010-2020*).

### **9.4. Orientation of the Management Plan until 2030**

The objectives, policies and orientation proposed in the Chapter 5 and 6 of this Management Plan will provide guidelines for the period 2015-2030 in order to protect the integrity and authenticity of the World Heritage property's attributes from negative impacts and to protect the Outstanding Universal Value of the heritage property in the long term. During the period 2015-2020 consideration will be given to setting up the re-nomination dossier of the Complex of Huế Monuments with a view to extend the protected zones to include the natural and feng-shui landscape. This will bring together the existing core areas, the new core areas outlined in Item 4.1.5 and a wider buffer zone

taking in the river valley, which links the serial sites, as well as the tracts of land needed to safeguard the core areas. Should this proposal proceed, it is hoped that re-inscription would occur within the 2015-2020 period and be fully implemented in 2020-2030. At the present time it is thought that the two main restrictions that would need to be enforced in managing the buffer zone section of the cultural landscape would be on the height of buildings and the removal of tree cover.





## **CHAPTER 10**

### **IMPLEMENTATION**

The Complex of Huế Monuments is subject to different influences and involves various agencies and departments at central and local levels, private businesses and community. Therefore the implementation of the site Management Plan must rely on an interdepartmental coordination basis to ensure a synchronized management and minimize potential conflicts of interests among agencies, industries and community in the conservation, exploitation and use of heritage values.

A clearly defined set of management mechanisms and effective coordination of central and local agencies, functional departments, businesses and communities in the implementation process is very important, enabling the success and effectiveness of the Management Plan.

#### **10.1. The role of central agencies**

##### ***10.1.1. Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism***

The Decree No. 76/2013/ ND-CP dated 16/07/2013 by the Prime Minister defines the functions, tasks, powers and organizational structure of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism and stipulates the Ministry's mandate in cultural heritage management as follows:

*“a) Propose the Prime Minister to consider and decide for:*

- Establishment of national museums, specialized museums under the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism*
- Classifications and modifications of protection zones for special national relics;*
- Approval guidelines, tasks and master plans for national special heritage or national relics requiring intensive investment;*
- Request UNESCO in recognition of outstanding cultural and natural heritages of Vietnam as World Heritages;*

- *Options to handle assets as cultural heritages in accordance with the laws;*

- *Recognition of national precious objects and permission to send those objects abroad for the purpose of exhibition, display, research or maintenance;*

*b) Empowered decisions:*

- *Agreements on guidelines, appraisal of conservation plans and tasks for national extraordinary relics and national heritages; providing guidance and implementing plans for protection and promotion of cultural heritage values upon their recognition by the government;*

- *Agreement in principal the proposal to prepare conservation projects for national extraordinary relics and national heritages and appraisal of such projects as well as rehabilitation projects of structures outside protection zones of national extraordinary relics and national heritages as stipulated by the laws; issuing business licenses for individuals and organizations specializing in conservation and restoration of heritages as being authorized;*

- *Classification of national relics, first-ranked museums, adjustments for protection zones of national relics; inscription of the national intangible cultural heritage list; handling artifacts, antiques and national precious objects to state museums being assigned as prescribed by the law; ratifying the competency in establishing national museums, specialized museums; agreement on classifications for second-ranked or third-ranked museums as prescribed by the law;*

- *Granting permission for archaeological exploration and excavation, permission to bring artifacts and antiques abroad for the purpose of exhibition, display, research or maintenance; permission for the Vietnamese overseas or foreign individuals and organizations to conduct research, collection of intangible cultural heritages of Vietnam according to the laws;*

- *Providing guidance on procedures to register artifacts, antiques and requirements for formulation and operation of antique assessment business;*

*- Presiding and coordinating with relevant agencies and organizations to set up incentive mechanism and policies to manage and tap all resources to protect and promote values of cultural heritages;*

*- Providing guidance and monitoring the protection and promotion activities of cultural heritage values”.*

During the implementation of the Management Plan for Huế Monuments Complex, the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism represented by the Department of Cultural Heritage will determine such issues relating to the master plan for conservation, rehabilitation and promotion of heritage values; agree upon conservation and restoration projects at Huế Monuments Complex; provide financial support from the fund of national targeted cultural programs for conservation and restoration of specific projects; monitor all indicators relating to conservation status which have been defined in profiled documents of national relics and national extraordinary monuments and application document to include Huế monuments complex in the World Heritage Lists.

The Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism will consider its approval of such state planning draft or other major projects in the heritage areas on the basis of consultation by the Department of Cultural Heritage and affiliated functional agencies.

The ministry is entitled to review Action Plans, existing policies and the effectiveness of the Management Plan to monitor the plan by the end of the first 5 years (by 2020).

#### ***10.1.2. The role of National Cultural Heritage Council***

Pursuant to the organizational and operational statute of the National Cultural Heritage Council issued by the Prime Minister as an attachment to Decision No 1569/QĐ-TTg dated August 19, 2010, the National Cultural Heritage Council functions as a consulting agency for the Prime Minister on critical issues relating to the protection and promotion of cultural heritage values. Such consultation is either on request or as an independent consulting agency.

The Council will recommend the Prime Minister scientific considerations on cultural heritages for major socio-economic projects within the areas of Huế monuments complex as requested by the Prime Minister or proposed by the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, or when the Council finds it necessary.

The National Cultural Heritage Council directly assists Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in strengthening the Centre's professional efficiency, provides training and consultation in protection and conservation heritage values.

#### ***10.1.3. The role of Vietnam National Commission for UNESCO***

According to the Decision No. 194 / QĐ-TTĐ dated 30/01/2011 by the Prime Minister on strengthening the Vietnam National Commission for UNESCO, the Commission functions as an advisory institution to the Prime Minister in his direction and coordination of UNESCO-related activities of ministries, ministerial-level agencies, government agencies, People's Committees of provinces and centrally-administered cities.

The Vietnam National Commission for UNESCO will advise, support and assist the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in technical expertise and orientation of the Centre's activities in accordance with the norms of UNESCO. It will coordinate with agencies of central level and Thừa Thiên Huế province in tracking and monitoring the implementation of Management Plan, and a liaison between Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and international organizations, particularly the UNESCO.

#### ***10.1.4. The role of UNESCO Office in Hanoi***

In the implementation of the Management Plan of the Complex of Huế Monuments, UNESCO Office in Hanoi shall continue its close collaboration with the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and relevant agencies in promoting the Outstanding Universal Value of the heritage sites in order to attract the attention of the community to participate in the process of heritage protection. The office supports the sharing of information between the World Heritage sites in Vietnam, including Huế Monuments Complex and heritage management

agencies in Vietnam to promote and strengthen management and conservation capacity for heritage sites.

The UNESCO Office in Hanoi shall support the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in preparing funding requests to UNESCO World Heritage Centre or international organizations for the preservation and promotion of Huế Monuments Complex; providing guidance on the application of international standards in the management and preservation of heritage; and coordinating with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre to undertake the “Action Plan for Management and Conservation of World Heritage Sites in five-year period” in line with the actual conditions of the heritage sites.

#### ***10.1.5. The role of research institutes in country and abroad***

These institutes are focus scientific research on developing the theoretical and practical basis for the conservation and promotion of heritage values. The national and local research institutes conduct fundamental research on historical, architectural, cultural settings and so on, as well as applied research on conservation of heritage, conservation engineering and technology. They provide consulting services on developing conservation project and promotion of heritage. Such institutes recommend state agencies in decision making of mechanisms, policies, strategy and plans related to the heritage. They undertake manpower training, disseminating knowledge about management and heritage conservation, and also coordinate with international scientific institutions in research works so as to assimilate up-to-date knowledge over the world and apply to specific conditions of the heritage sites.

### **10.2. The role of local authorities and functional organizations**

#### ***10.2.1. The role of Thừa Thiên Huế People’s Committee***

The People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province is the local umbrella authority which manages all fields of the Thừa Thiên Huế province, including the field of culture. To implement the Management Plan of Huế Monuments Complex, the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province shall:

- Approve (technically and financially) the operation plan and monitoring on-going activities of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Approve and promulgate the Regulation on management, protection and promotion of the values of Huế Monuments Complex and other related regulations proposed by Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Propose that The Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism request the Prime Minister to approve the master plan to preserve, restore and promote the values of Huế Monuments Complex by 2020 when the implementation of project “the Adjusted Planning Framework for the Complex of Huế Monuments to preserve and promote the values of Huế Monuments Complex, period 2010 – 2020”.

- Based on recommendations by Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and relevant agencies and departments, the Provincial People’s Committee (PPC) may or may not adopt the development plan at province level within Huế Monuments Complex. The PPC contributes its suggestions and comments on the nationwide planning or major planning by central institutions and ministries in the territory of Thừa Thiên Huế province, its districts, towns and the city where relics and heritage sites are situated.

- Revise additional mandates and powers of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, and appoint managerial positions of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Define the legal framework and institutional collaboration between Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and other related organizations and individuals in performing consistent management of Huế Monuments Complex.

- On the basis of recommendations by Huế Monuments Conservation Centre, PPC shall consider and approve action plans, policies for the Management Plan to update at the end of the first 5-year period (in 2020), then assigns functional affiliated departments to work closely with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in implementing approved actions and policies to protect the Outstanding Universal Value of Huế Monuments Complex.

- Give instructions to the development and approve the proposals and plans concerning the Management Plan of the Complex of Huế Monuments

*(See the Annex no. 3: Proposed public investment in medium term in the restoration of the Complex of Huế Monuments in the period 2016 – 2020).*

#### **10.2.2. Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism**

- Take charge in providing guidance and supervision the compliance of state regulations in cultural and tourism activities; communication and dissemination of knowledge and the law; commending attainments of individuals and units in heritage protection, reporting violations to heritage on local mass media, conducting studies to develop sustainable tourism products.

- Carry out the master plan for tourism development in Thừa Thiên Huế, in which attention is given to sustainable conservation of Huế Monuments Complex.

- Consult with the Provincial People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế in making policies for tourism development in the whole province; providing guidance to districts, towns and the city where relics of Huế Monuments Complex are situated to design master plan for tourism development, the arrangements at tourist attractions in their areas.

- Give guidance and coordinate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and related agencies in formulating regulations to manage tourism activities in heritage sites; compile advocacy and promotion materials for the conservation of heritage values.

- Undertake the management mandate in coordination with relevant agencies in the conserving and promoting values of classified and enlisted heritages of the province and the country in accordance with the Law on Cultural Heritage in districts, towns and the city, where relics and monuments of Huế Monuments Complex are situated. These include Huế city, the towns of Hương Trà and Hương Thủy, and Phú Vang district.

- Provide guidance in coordination with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in proposing the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế, Ministry of



Culture, Sports and Tourism to consider the classification of provincial, national and special national relics in the heritage property.

- Provide guidance, appraisal of document, projects for relic preservation, renovation, rehabilitation and restoration of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Provide guidance and investigate the maintenance, management and promotion of object values at the sites of Huế Monuments Complex and Huế Museum of Royal Antiquities.

- Appraise the dossiers submitting to the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism for the permission of the archaeological survey and excavation in the area of heritage property.

- Implement the professional inspection in cooperation with the related provincial bodies to check and handle the intentional violations at the tourist trouble-spot as prescribed by the law; maintain the hotline to respond and resolve promptly the tourist claims.

- Remind tourist businesses to strictly observe regulations in business operation; closely controlling services of tour guides and service suppliers to avoid solicitation, overcharge and brokers.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 1591/QĐ-UBND dated July 11, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Culture, Sport and Tourism.

### ***10.2.3. The role of Huế Monuments Conservation Centre***

Huế Monuments Conservation Centre undertakes direct management of heritage areas under the authorization of the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province to preserve and promote the values of Huế Monuments Complex. Based on its mandates and functions assigned by the People's Committee of

Thừa Thiên Huế as per Decision No. 2062/QĐ-PPC dated November 29, 2010, in order to realize the Management Plan of Huế Monuments Complex. Huế Monuments Conservation Centre will continue to perform its role as the coordinating agency for all activities related to the heritage sites, which include:

- Providing consultation and assistance to the PPC of Thừa Thiên Huế in management, conservation, restoration, exploitation and promotion of the values of Huế Monuments Complex.

- Manage the overall planning of conservation and restoration of Huế Monuments during the period 2010-2020 in accordance with the Decision No. 818/QĐ-TTg dated June 7, 2010 by the Prime Minister and the Management Plan for Huế Monuments Complex during the period 2015–2020 and the vision to 2030.

- Develop and implement projects for renovation, rehabilitation and restoration of classified monuments or projects for tourism infrastructure and landscapes restoration within heritage sites.

- Undertake maintenance of all degraded structures (to prevent from collapse, leaky roofs, termite, invasive plants), emergency repair and rehabilitation of top prioritized structures where historical materials and scientific basis are well documented, restoration of decorative and architectural structures that were lost or misplaced (due to historical reasons).

- Propose adjusted protection zoning for heritage sites of Huế Monuments Complex to control the urbanization and infrastructure development in the districts, towns and cities being home to heritage sites.

- Define borders of protection zones and in coordination with local authorities and functional departments in carrying out resettlement and removal of inhabitants away from key areas.

- Clause 3 of Article 32 of the Law on Cultural Heritage stipulates activities in protected areas type I and type II of monuments to manage restoration and renovation operations within heritage sites.

- Coordinate with local authorities and functional departments (Department of Transportation, Department of Agriculture and Rural Development) in performing activities to minimize negative impacts on visibility, noise pollution from the west bypass of National Highway 1A running across Minh Mạng and Khải Định Tombs.

- Carry out scientific research, education advocacy, promotion of values, documentation of all existing and destroyed relics; conducting studies to identify visitor capacity at key relics where high influx of tourists is observed to avoid negative impacts of tourists, especially during the Huế Festival.

- Strengthen the collaborative relationships with local authorities (communes, wards), forest ranger stations and armed units based in the area such as the military and police to enhance the heritage management efficiency.

- Coordinate with competent state agencies involved in appraisal process of projects directly related to Huế Monuments Complex.

- Cooperate with other organizations and individuals at home and abroad to conduct scientific research, conservation and promotion of heritage values, environmental and landscape protection for Huế Monuments Complex; Implementing international cooperation programs; particularly in partnership with UNESCO, making full use of the cooperation and assistance extended by international community, governments, non-governmental organizations and foreign individuals; performing effective management and utilization of resources as prescribed by the laws.

- Take the lead in coordination with other agencies and specialized archaeological institutes in exploration and excavation at archaeological sites and remnants of Huế Monuments Complex in line with the existing regulations.

- Organize research works and application of scientific and technological advances, developing database and documentation systems for heritage sites.

- Conduct activities to advocate, promote and exhibit tangible and intangible heritages of Huế Monuments Complex. Advocacy activity should

give emphasis to disaster risk to raise awareness of the community and encourage participatory consultation of local inhabitants.

- Upgrade infrastructure, including the drainage, roads and electricity at monuments, enhancing the natural settings in the Imperial City, the Citadel the royal tombs and other sites which belong to the Complex of Hue Monuments.

- Develop a comprehensive Management Plan to manage the landscape elements of Huế Monuments Complex, including the system of trees, forest landscapes, gardens and ornamental lakes and ponds in the heritage sites, to ensure not yet affect the outstanding universal value of the heritage sites.

- Reinforce foundations, embankments of monuments in damage to prevent erosion by floods; setting props, anchor bracing for structures by poles and wires to ensure the safety of the relics during storm; installing lightning protection systems, fire extinguishers and training to staff how to operate equipments; developing fire prevention plans and firefighting training.

- Every year, the Steering Committee for Flood & Storm Prevention, Search and Rescue of HMCC will be consolidated in readiness for coping with natural disaster incidents, propose concrete plans for disaster prevention and rescue within heritage sites.

- Repair, upgrade and reinforce the system of lakes, ponds and canals; dredging of lakes, ponds and drainage ditches around the monuments to regulate the water flow and circulation, flood diversion to reduce pressures on the lakes and ponds in the heritage sites.

- Develop plans to plant grasses on yards and gardens, trees on hills, etc to prevent erosion and landslide; replanting landscape forests and planting additional trees to ensure coverage density, prevent erosion affecting monuments over the hills or reduce noises of traffic at places near highways and residential areas like Gia Long Tomb, Minh Mạng Tomb, Thiệu Trị Tomb, Huế Nam Temple and others; develop a plan for tree nourishing and trimming to ensure appropriate forest density, control height limit to reduce the risk of forest fires and lightning.

- Define and clear fire break corridors, safety paths within the landscape forest, conducting regular clearing of low shrubs and dried leaves on ground to reduce the risk of forest fires at the tombs of Minh Mạng, Tự Đức, Thiệu Trị and Nam Giao Esplanade.

- Set up signing posts for warnings and restricted areas in dangerous landscape forests, arranging water lines to landscape forests to enable firefighting at Minh Mạng Tomb, Huế Nam Temple, etc.

- Arrange services and commercial activities serving the socio-economic development at monuments or cluster of relics of Huế Monuments Complex.

- Collaborate with relevant agencies to conduct studies and records values of the intangible culture and natural settings attached to monuments for the purpose of conservation, education and preservation of traditions, cultural identity, from where to enhance people's enjoyment on their culture.

- Provide tour guide service serving visitors at heritage sites; controlling ticketing and entrance fee usage as prescribed by the law.

- Assume the prime responsibility in coordination with local authorities and functional departments in management, monitoring, detection and disposal or referring jurisdiction agencies of any violation by individuals or organizations who are operating business or social activities in the heritage sites.

- Coordinate related functional departments and local authorities in ensuring safety and security, environmental sanitation, preservation of cultural and landscape settings surroundings relics and monuments.

- Take lead in coordination with relevant agencies to complete the renomination dossiers for Huế Monuments Complex and suggest the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế to request the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, the National Cultural Heritage Council to propose the Prime Minister's approval, before submitting to UNESCO to reconsider and recognize Huế Monuments Complex as the World Cultural Heritage for the second time (as defined in Article 31 of the Law on Cultural Heritage).

- Oversee the accomplishment of legal and institutional framework for the co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with relevant functional departments and local authorities.

#### ***10.2.4. Department of Agriculture and Rural Development***

- Undertake irrigation planning for agricultural development in heritage sites in coordination with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre; preserving values of natural settings, landscape forests; coordinating with the Department of Natural Resources and Environment to control the conversion of land use purpose to reduce negative impacts of development and urbanization on heritage sites.

- Coordinate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in preparing Management Plan for special use forest areas, landscape forests surrounding royal tombs and relics in heritage sites.

- Provide guidance and supervision on the legislative compliance in forest planting and protection, making protection associated with the forestry management, forest fire prevention and fighting.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 1505/QĐ-UBND dated July 01, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Agriculture and Rural Development.

#### ***10.2.5. Department of Natural Resources and Environment***

- Undertake state management of the resource utilization and environmental protection, monitoring and handling of environmental violations in heritage sites in coordination with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre; providing consultation to the Provincial People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế in dealing with problems relating to land, mineral, forest and environment in heritage sites. Based on the needs of heritage planning, it provides guidance and carries out master plan and land use plan in accordance with management and

development requirements. Besides, it provides guidance to organizations and individuals in complying legal documents and approved plans for environment in heritage sites.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 1855/QĐ-UBND dated October 12, 2012 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Natural Resources and Environment.

#### ***10.2.6. Department of Construction***

- Take charge in providing guidance, appraisal and supervision the compliance of state regulations related to construction activities, building tourism infrastructure, water supply and drainage infrastructure, sewage and waste treatment around and within the areas of monuments and relics of Huế Monuments Complex.

- Coordinate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and relevant authorities to inspect and supervise construction activities at relic sites; strictly and timely handling illegal construction activities in heritage sites.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 756/QĐ-UBND dated February 25, 2009 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Construction.

#### ***10.2.7. Department of Transportation***

- Take charge in providing guidance, surveillance and supervision the compliance of state regulations related to the road and waterway transportation. It collaborates with the Department of Natural Resources and Environment to

protect the environment in heritage sites. Propose the solutions to Minimize negative impacts on visibility, noise and pollution from the Huế City bypass of National Highway 1A running alongside the Minh Mạng Tomb and Khải Định Tomb which has been concerned by UNESCO.

- Intensify the coordination with functional agencies advocating regulations related to transport activities in heritage sites.

- Provide guidance to train stations, bus stations and wharf authorities to raise awareness of employees and passengers in environmental sanitation and appropriate behaviors in public places.

- Intensify monitoring activities and handling violations on passenger transportation such as technically unsafe vehicles, surplus passengers on board, or picking and dropping passengers not at official places.

- Ensure regular coordination with the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism to organize training courses on tourism for service personnel, taxi drivers or tourist car and bus chauffeurs, etc.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 396/QĐ-UBND dated February 25, 2009 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Transportation.

#### ***10.2.8. Department of Science and Technology***

- Take charge in providing appraisal of applied technologies in heritage management as prescribed by the laws; provide information. guidances to organizations and individuals involving in scientific works serving the protection of heritages; encourage organizations and individuals applying advanced technologies in heritage protection.

- Collaborate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in carrying out scientific research and studies on Huế Monuments Complex.



- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 2361/QĐ-UBND dated October 16, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Science and Technology.

#### ***10.2.9. Department of Foreign Affairs***

- Cooperate with the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and the related organizations to push up the introduction and dissemination of the Complex of Huế monument's value internationally, promote the international cooperation to attract more capitals and experience of international organizations and individuals in preserving the heritage property.

- Implement the related tasks as regularised in the Decision No. 2887/QĐ-UBND dated December 30, 2009 by the Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People Committee on the function, task, authority and structure of the provincial Department of Foreign Affairs.

- Mobilize the NGOs in the sponsorship for the researches and restoration, promotion of the Complex of Hue Monuments.

#### ***10.2.10. Department of Education and Training***

- Take charge in giving direction and guidance to local school in districts, towns and the city where relics and monuments of Huế Monuments Complex are located to formulate voluntary clubs for heritage protection in combination with the advocacy and education on heritage values.

- Coordinate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre to carry out the heritage education program in different ways.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 2338/QĐ-UBND dated November 11, 2013 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Education and Training.

#### ***10.2.11. Department of Information and Communication***

- Give instructions to media agencies to raise the awareness for local community on the preservation and promotion of heritage; coordinate with the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism in public communication campaigns on the awareness of civilized urban lifestyle, commercial culture and ethics at tourism attractions in order to improve the tourism business environment.

- Actively cooperate with the Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and other related organizations to push up the public propaganda on the heritage value, the role and responsibility of relevant organizations and individuals in the management and protection of the Complex of Huế Monuments

- Implement other related tasks as regularised in the Decision No. 1725/QĐ-UBND dated July 31, 2008 by Thừa Thiên Huế Provincial People's Committee on the function, task and authority of the Provincial Department of Information and Communication.

#### ***10.2.12. Department of Industry and Trade***

Strengthen the market control system in coordination with concerned departments and agencies to promptly deal with fraud, behaviors of not posting selling price or overcharging, selling fake and poor quality goods unsafety foods.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 1612/QĐ-UBND dated July 07, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Industry and Trade.

#### ***10.2.13. Department of Health***

Give direction in accurate information provision and timely response to diseases and epidemic outbreak incurred by tourism activities; consolidating food hygiene in restaurants, hotels, food and beverage services.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 1241/QĐ-UBND dated May 26, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Health.

#### ***10.2.14. Department of Home Affairs***

- Take charge in providing appraisal and submission of the permission request to the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province for Plan of establishment of under the management of the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province, with the aim of sustainable protection of the Outstanding Universal Values of Huế Monuments Complex and building Huế becomes the Standards Centre for Conservation of the Asia – Pacific.

- Review and propose to the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province to promulgate the functions, mandates and organizational structure of HMCC in relation to the actual needs and condition.

- Periodically check and submit the assignation of the civil service workforce target of HMCC.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 1278/QĐ-UBND dated June 22, 2011 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Home Affairs.

#### ***10.2.15. Department of Planning and Investment***

- Monitor and evaluate the implementation of the Management Plan for Huế Monuments Complex phase by phase; collaborating with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and related agencies to request the provincial People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế in any modifications to the Management Plan for Huế Monuments Complex to adapt the actual situation; consulting in appraisal of investment projects, technology application in heritage management in line with the existing regulations.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 2889/QĐ-UBND dated December 30, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Planning and Investment and Decision No. 1896/QĐ-UBND dated September 23, 2013 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning modifications of Decision No. 2889/QĐ-UBND dated December 30, 2008 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province.

#### ***10.2.16. Department of Finance***

- Make recommendations to the People's Committee and People's Council of Thừa Thiên Huế on the collection of entrance fees to monuments and reservation of certain percentage from the revenue for the implementation of the Management Plan in accordance with budget estimate being ratified by the Provincial People's Council.

- Provide guidance, monitor and supervise budget lines to implement the Management Plan.

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Implement other functions concerned at the Decision No. 2797/QĐ-UBND dated December 21, 2009 by the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế province concerning mandates, powers and organizational structure of Department of Finance.

#### ***10.2.17. Public Security Department***

- Give the instructions to the police forces to undertake examinations, inspections to control and cope with violations in relics and monuments of Huế Monuments Complex.

- Coordinate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and local authorities to guide local inhabitants observe regulations relating to the protection of heritage.

- Give instructions to the Police unit at ward and commune level to ensure the security at the heritage sites

- Maintain the regular investigation at the key routes and tourist attractions, where there might be risks to tourists; Take the lead in prevention, detection and apply punishment to offenders who endanger the life and property of tourists.

- Cooperate with related government agencies and HMCC in finalization of the legal framework and the consistent management framework of the Complex of Huế Monuments.

#### ***10.2.18. Steering Committee for Flood and Storm Prevention and Control - Search and Rescue of Thừa Thiên Huế***

- To advise the Provincial People's Committee in managing the operation of prevention and mitigation of disasters, floods and typhoons, at the heritage sites of Huế Monuments Complex in particular.

- Develop annual plans for flood and storm prevention, search and rescue operation in the province, including the areas of the Complex of Hue Monuments.

- Supervise and monitor the annual flood – storm prevention plans prepared by provincial agencies and local authorities; conduct manoeuvres of flood – storm prevention, search and rescue operation in vulnerable areas.

- Keep constant track on torrential rains, typhoons to update the public and recommending measures to prevent and mitigate the influences of natural disasters.

- Provide guidance to provincial agencies and local authorities on remedies to overcome the consequences of natural disaster, hurricane, flood, earthquake or tsunami incidents.

- Organize review meetings to evaluate the outputs of flood – storm prevention and control, search and rescue operation to disseminate successful experiences and advanced techniques being adopted by local agencies.

***10.2.19. Frontier post at Thuan An port***

- The border guard unit of Thuan An port shall work closely with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in co-management and protection of Tran Hai Thanh fortress.

- Annually, this unit shall collaborate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre to assess the existing condition of the fortress in order to plan for possible preservation and restoration, to minimize mosses and invasive plants over the enclosed wall and inside structures.

***10.2.20. People's Committees of districts, towns, Huế city where relics and buffer are distributed***

People's Committees of districts, towns, Huế city, communes, wards where relics and buffer zones are distributed perform their mandates and powers in undertaking measures to protect heritage sites; collaborate with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and related agencies to control construction permits of new structures and urban development projects; implement removal and resettlement program for local inhabitants, control population growth rate, while facilitating enterprises to participate in tourism services, environmental protection and support for training local people.

- Cooperate and Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Huế Monuments Complex in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre.

- Give instructions to the People's Committees at ward and commune level in the implementation of measures and solutions ensuring the security and safety for the monuments, raising awareness for local people in heritage preservation.

- Cooperate with HMCC to finalize the Proposal of Relocation of local households living within the core zones of heritage sites.

#### **10.2.20.1. People's Committee of Huế City**

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of relics and monuments such as the Imperial City, the Citadel, Binh Dai Fortress, Nam Giao Esplanade, Tiger and Elephant Arena, Thiên Mụ Pagoda, Tụ Đức Tomb, Dục Đức Tomb, Đồng Khánh Tomb in coordination with provincial functional agencies and Huế Monuments Conservation Centre and other relevant relics.

#### **10.2.20.2. People's Committee of Hương Trà Town**

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of relics and monuments such as Temple of Literature, Temple of Military, Hon CHên Temple. Gia Long Tomb, Minh Mạng Tomb and other relevant relics.

#### **10.2.20.3. People's Committee of Hương Thủy Town**

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of relics and monuments such as Thiệu Trị Tomb, Khải Định Tomb and other relevant relics.

#### **10.2.20.4. People's Committee of Phú Vang District**

- Participate in the process of designing the legal and institutional framework for co-management of Tran hai Thanh Fortress and other relevant relics.

**10.2.20.5. People's Committees of wards, communes and townships where relics and buffer zones are situated** (including the communes of Hương Thọ and Thuy Bang; the wards of Thuy Xuan, Truong An, An Cuu, Huong Long, Hương Hồ, Thuan Thanh, Thuan Hoa, Thuan Loc, An Dong, Phu Nhuan, Tay Loc, Phu Hoa, Phu Thuan, Phu Binh, Thuy Bieu; and the township of Thuan An)

- Advocate and encourage local inhabitants in protection of heritages in the area.

- Support community economic development patterns to improve sustainable livelihoods of inhabitants living in the heritage sites.

- Take part in the co-management of relics and monuments in Huế Monuments Complex located in their jurisdiction together with Huế Monuments Conservation Centre .

### **10.3. The roles of local communities, inhabitants, enterprises, and social – political organizations**

#### ***10.3.1. The roles of local communities and inhabitants***

Being aware of the crucial role of local community in participatory management of heritage, during the past eayrs, a variety of advocacy education approaches on heritage management and protection have been launched to engage local people in participatory management as well as mobilize human and financial resources for heritage preservation.. The materials for heritage education were designed and implemented by Huế Monuments Conservation Centre in heritage sites. This enables better understanding and awareness of local inhabitants on their responsibilities of protection and management of heritage in general, and the specific relics in their quarter in particular. This achievement should be intensified in following periods.

In particular, the participation of Nguyen Phuoc (royal) family members in the organization and implementation of the ceremonies and worship rituals at the monuments of Nguyen Dynasty has been highly important. The Huế Monuments Conservation Center shall continue pay high respect and create favourable conditions for Nguyen Phuoc families to actively and voluntarily take part in the call for financial contribution for the restoration of monuments and tombs of Nguyen Lords. Furthermore, this property is a World Heritage with typical characteristics of a monarchical heritage, thus, the participation and involvement of the Royal Nguyen Phuoc family members will contribute to the identical cultural aspects of the heritage.



### ***10.3.2. The roles of social and political organizations***

Social – political organizations like the Fatherland Front, Youth Union, Pioneer Teenage Association, Women’s Union, Veterans Association and other societies are stakeholders in the implementation and monitoring of the Management Plan. They play active roles in advocacy and encouraging local communities in protection and promotion of heritage values..

### ***10.3.3. The roles of private sector directly involved in conservation and doing business in heritage sites of Hué Monuments Complex***

. These stakeholders have positive contribution to the promotion of heritage, support and sponsor the financial resources for the restoration of the monuments and contribute to the sustainable development of the heritage.

### ***10.3.4. Tourism service providers and travel agents***

These stakeholders have the role in the promotion of Hué Monuments Complex to domestic and international visitors. They will collaborate with Hué Monuments Conservation Centre and related agencies to introduce cultural values as tourism products so as to attract tourists visiting and studying the heritage sites.

## REFERENCES

### Documents in Vietnamese:

1. Phan Thuận An, 2009. *Kiến trúc Cố đô Huế*, NXB Đà Nẵng (in lần thứ 16).
2. Bộ Văn hóa – Thông tin (nay là Bộ Văn hóa, Thể thao và Du lịch), 1991. *Hồ sơ đề nghị ghi danh Quần thể Di tích Cố đô Huế vào Danh mục Di sản Thế giới*.
3. Bộ Văn hóa – Thông tin (nay là Bộ Văn hóa, Thể thao và Du lịch), 1991. *Các văn bản pháp lý và Danh mục hồ sơ đề nghị ghi danh Quần thể Di tích Cố đô Huế vào Danh mục Di sản Thế giới*.
4. Trung tâm Bảo tồn Di tích Cố đô Huế, 1993, *Hồ sơ đề cử Quần thể Di tích Cố đô Huế là Di sản Thế giới*
5. Trung tâm Bảo tồn Di tích Cố đô Huế, 2001. *Thời gian đã chứng minh – Tập san kỷ niệm 5 năm thực hiện dự án Quy hoạch bảo tồn và phát huy giá trị Di tích Cố đô Huế*.
6. Trung tâm Bảo tồn Di tích Cố đô Huế và Hội Liên hiệp các ngành Khoa học kỹ thuật Thừa Thiên Huế, 2003. *Kỷ yếu Hội thảo Di sản văn hóa Huế - Bảo tồn và phát triển*.
7. Trung tâm Bảo tồn Di tích Cố đô Huế. *Di sản văn hóa Huế - Nghiên cứu và bảo tồn*, tập I (2007), tập II (2012), tập III (2013).
8. Trung tâm Bảo tồn Di tích Cố đô Huế, 2013. *Công cuộc bảo tồn Di sản Thế giới ở Thừa Thiên Huế*.
9. Trung tâm Bảo tồn Di tích Cố đô Huế, 2013. *Di sản Huế*, số 2 (2013).
10. Trường Đại học Nông nghiệp Hà Nội và Dự án TOTEPAM, 2011. *Sổ tay lập Kế hoạch và quản lý môi trường*, Nxb. Nông nghiệp, Hà Nội.
11. Ủy ban nhân dân tỉnh Thừa Thiên Huế, 2005. *Báo cáo số 08/VH-UB ngày 28/01/2005 của Ủy ban nhân dân tỉnh Thừa Thiên Huế giải trình các vấn đề liên quan đến công tác bảo tồn Quần thể Di tích Cố đô Huế theo Khuyến nghị của Ủy ban Di sản Thế giới UNESCO*.
12. Ủy ban nhân dân tỉnh Thừa Thiên Huế, 2007. *Báo cáo số 10/VH-UBND ngày 30/01/2007 của Ủy ban nhân dân tỉnh Thừa Thiên Huế giải trình các vấn đề liên quan đến công tác bảo tồn Quần thể Di tích Cố đô Huế theo khuyến nghị tại Quyết định số 30 COM 7B.71 của Ủy ban Di sản Thế giới UNESCO*.

13. Ủy ban nhân dân tỉnh Thừa Thiên Huế 2011, *Kế hoạch số 35/KH-UBND ngày 13/5/2011 triển khai thực hiện Quyết định số 818/QĐ-TTg ngày 07/6/2010 của Thủ tướng Chính phủ Phê duyệt Đề án Điều chỉnh quy hoạch bảo tồn và phát huy giá trị di tích Cố đô Huế giai đoạn 2010-2020*
14. Urban Solutions, 2013. *Báo cáo cuối cùng dự án xây dựng năng lực quản lý Di sản Văn hóa Thế giới Cố đô Huế trong bối cảnh đô thị.*

### **Documents in Foreign languages**

1. Arthur Pederson, 2002, *Managing Tourism at World Heritage Sites: a Practical Manual for World Heritage Site Managers*, 96pp.
2. Maria Ana Borges, Giulia Carbone, Robyn Bushell and Tilman Jaeger, 2011. *Sustainable tourism and natural World Heritage – Priorities for actions*. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN. 29 pp.
3. IUCN, UNESCO, WCPA, 2008, *Management Planning for Natural World Heritage Properties – A Resource Manual for Practitioners*. 30pp.
4. UNESCO, 2013. *Operational guidelines for the implementation of the World Heritage Convention*. UNESCO World Heritage Center. 173pp.
5. UNESCO, ICCROM, ICOMOS, IUCN, 2010, *Managing disaster Risks for World Heritage*, 69pp.
6. UNESCO, ICCROM, ICOMOS, IUCN, 2013, *Resource Manual - Managing Natural World Heritage*, 98pp.
7. UNESCO, ICCROM, ICOMOS, IUCN, 2013, *Resource Manual - Managing Cultural World Heritage*, 155pp.
8. WHC, ICCROM, IUCN and ICOMOS, 2011, *Preparing the world heritage nominations – second edition*, 138pp.

## APPENDIXES

### A. ILLUSTRATIVE PHOTOS

No.	Fig.	Contents
1	Fig.1&2	<i>International and national experts attended the Consultation Workshop on the Site Management Plan of the Hue Complex of Monuments (October 2014)</i>
2	Fig.3	<i>Aerial photo of Hue Citadel</i>
3	Fig.4	<i>Aerial photo Trấn Bình Đài</i>
4	Fig.5	<i>Trấn Hải Thành</i>
5	Fig.6	<i>Văn Miếu Huế (Hue Temple of Literature)</i>
6	Fig.7	<i>Võ Miếu (Temple of Military)</i>
7	Fig.8	<i>Nam Giao esplanade</i>
8	Fig.9	<i>Hổ Quyền (Tiger Arena)</i>
9	Fig.10	<i>Voi Ré temple</i>
10	Fig.11	<i>Huệ Nam Landscape</i>
11	Fig.12	<i>Panorama of Thiên Mụ pagoda (aerial photo)</i>
12	Fig.13	<i>Gia Long tomb (aerial photo)</i>
13	Fig.14	<i>Minh Mạng tomb (aerial photo)</i>
14	Fig.15	<i>Thiệu Trị tomb (aerial photo)</i>
15	Fig.16	<i>Tự Đức tomb (aerial photo)</i>
16	Fig.17	<i>Dục Đức tomb</i>
17	Fig.18	<i>Đồng Khánh tomb</i>
18	Fig.19	<i>Khải Định tomb</i>
19	Fig.20	<i>Workshop on “Developing the Disaster Risks Management Plan for the World Heritage of Hue Complex of Monuments, Hoi An Ancient Town and and Thang Long Citadel”, Hue City April 2013.</i>
20	Fig.21	<i>Mr.Nguyễn Văn Cao – Chairman of Thua Thien-Hue Provincial People’s Committee chaired the Consultation Workshop on the Site Management Plan of the Hue Complex of Monuments with the participation of related government agencies in the Province.</i>
21	Fig.22	<i>Ms. Katherine Muller-Marin – Head of UNESCO Office in Viet Nam delivered a speech at the 30<sup>th</sup> Establishment</i>

*Anniversary Ceremony of the Hue Monuments Conservation Center (1982 – 2012).*

**B. LIST OF MAPS**

No.	Name	Contents
1	Map 1	Location of the complex of Huế Monuments inscribed in 1993 by UNESCO
2	Drawing 1	Site plan of Đại Nội - Huế
3	Drawing 2	Nam Giao site plan

**C. APPENDIXES**

**Annex no. 1**

The principal legal articles applied for the management and protection of the Complex of Huế Monuments

**Annex no. 2**

Proposed public investment in medium term in the restoration of the Complex of Huế Monuments in the period 2016 – 2020

**Annex no. 3**

List of relevant projects and achievements in the implementation of the Management Plan of the Complex of Huế monuments

## ANNEX NO.1

### THE PRINCIPAL LEGAL ARTICLES APPLIED IN THE MANAGEMENT AND PROTECTION OF THE COMPLEX OF HUÉ MONUMENTS

#### 1. Law on Cultural Heritage and the Implementation Guidelines

*1.1. Law on Cultural Heritage in 2001 and the Amendment and supplement to the Law on Cultural Heritage in 2009 (hereafter called the Law on Cultural Heritage)*

The item 1, 2 and 3 of the Law on Cultural Heritage show that:

*“The following are prohibited: Appropriating or deviating historical-cultural heritages, famous landscapes and beauty spots; Destruction or threatening to destroy cultural heritage; Illegal archaeological excavations; illegal construction or expropriation of land at historical-cultural sites or scenic landscapes”.*

Especially, the zone I and zone II identified in the provincial, national and special national dossiers of monument and in the nomination dossier of the World Heritage will be the most important legal documents to manage and protect all activities in the zoning area of the Complex of Hué Monuments. The item 3 of Article 32 of the Law on Cultural Heritage clarifies as below:

*“1. Protection zone I must be protected in its original state in terms of ground and space. In special cases where works need to be constructed in service of the protection and promotion of the relic’s values, the construction must be approved in writing by the competent body in charge of ranking that relic.*

*The construction of works for the protection and promotion of relics’s values in the protection zone II must be agreed upon in writing by the presidents of the provincial-level People’s Committees for provincial-level relics and by the Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism for national relics and special national relics.*

*The contruction of works as stipulated in this clause must not affect the relic's original constituents, natural scenery and ecological environment of the relic.*

The item 1, 2 and 3 of the Article 33 of the Law on Cultural Heritage prescribes as follows:

*1. Organizations and individuals who are the owners, managers or administrators of cultural sites have the obligation to protect that site. In case it is discovered that the site has been violated, damaged or threatened with damage, they must undertake timely preventative measures and inform the next level of authorities directly in charge, the local People's Committee, or the nearest state authorities responsible for culture, sports and tourism.*

*2. Local People's Committees or state authorities responsible for culture, sports and tourism who receive reports of damage or threats of damage to a cultural site must apply timely preventative and protective measures and make an immediate report to the authorities directly above them.*

*3. When the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism receives reports of damage or threats of damage to a cultural site, it must supply timely guidance and direction to responsible state authorities on the local level and to the owners of the cultural site to apply immediate preventative and protective measures. Regarding special national-level sites the Ministry must report to the Prime Minister.*

The content a and b of the item 1, Article 34 of the Law on Cultural Heritage shows that:

*a) Preserving the relics' original constituents to the utmost;*

*b) Making plans or projects and submitting them to the competent State agencies for approval, except the cases where the repairs are minor, leaving no effect on the relics' original constituents. Receiving approval in writing from the provincial-level competent agencies in charge of culture, sports and tourism for provincial-level relics and from the Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism for national relics and special national relics;*

The Law on Cultural Heritage also classifies in detail the responsibility of the People's Committee at all levels and of the relevant ministries or branches in the protection and promotion of the cultural heritage's values. This is the important legal document affecting positively to the activities of assuring the integrity and authenticity of the Complex of Hué Monuments. The Article 55 of the Law on Cultural Heritage prescribes as follows:

*1. The Government shall ensure unified state management of cultural heritage.*

*2. The Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism bears the primary responsibility within the Government for implementing state management of cultural heritage.*

*3. All ministries, ministry-level institutions and committees under the Government have an obligation to manage cultural heritage as assigned by the Government.*

*The Government shall regulate specific responsibilities of ministries, ministry-level institutions and committees under the Government to work in coordination with the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, in order to ensure unified state management of cultural heritage.*

*4. People's Committees at all levels shall implement state management of cultural heritage at the local level within the scope of their rights and responsibilities delegated by the Government.*

Article 36 of the Law on Cultural Heritage prescribes as follows:

*1. The approval of projects to improve or construct structures lying outside the protected cultural areas regulated in Article 32 of this Law but considered to have the possibility of negative influence on the natural beauty, ecology or environment of the site must include the written comments and evaluation of state authorities responsible for culture, sports and tourism.*

*2. In the case that the principal investor in a project to improve or construct a structure regulated in point 1 of this Article so requests, state authorities responsible for culture, sports and tourism have the obligation to*



*supply relevant materials and the specific requirements for protecting the site, so that the principal investor can select appropriate measures to guarantee the protection and promotion of the site.*

*3. Investors of projects on renovation or construction of works at places affecting relics shall have to coordinate with and create conditions for the competent State agencies in charge of culture, sports and tourism to supervise the process of renovation or construction of such works.*

***1.2. The Decree No. 98/2010/NĐ-CP dated September 21, 2010 by the government on detailed regulations to implement a number of articles of the Law on Cultural Heritage and the Amendment and supplement to the Law on Cultural Heritage (hereafter co-called the Decree No.9802010/NĐ-CP***

The Article 3 of the Decree No.98/2010/NĐ-CP prescribes as follows:

*1. Formulating and implementing target programs on the preservation of cultural heritage of outstanding value;*

*2. Commending organizations and individuals that obtain achievements in the protection and promotion of cultural heritage values; granting national titles of honor and adopting preferential policies by both spiritual and material means toward artisans and artists who practice and have merits in disseminating traditional arts and professional know-how of special value;*

*3. Conducting studies on the application of scientific and technological achievements to the following activities:*

*a) Exploring and excavating archeological sites; preserving, restoring, embellishing and promoting the values of relics;*

*b) Evaluating and managing the collections; preserving exhibits; adjusting and renovating collections on display, forms of display and education activity of museums;*

*c) Collecting, keeping record of and disseminating the values of intangible cultural heritage; setting up a data bank on intangible cultural heritage.*

*4. Training and refreshing experts and specialists working in the field of cultural heritage protection and promotion;*

*5. Encouraging and creating conditions for organizations and individuals, both at home and abroad, to make spiritual and material contributions to, or participate directly in, the protection and promotion of cultural heritage values;*

*6. Expanding international cooperation of various forms in the protection and promotion of cultural heritage values, and developing and implementing international cooperation projects in conformity with the provisions of the law.*

Item 1 Article 4 of the Decree No.98/2010/NĐ-CP shows that:

*“Behaviors that distort relics include:*

*a) Altering the relic’s original constituents by adding, relocating or changing exhibits in relics, or restoring and embellishing without respecting the relic’s original constituents and other activities, without the permission of the competent State agency in charge of culture, sports and tourism; disseminating and presenting in a manner that distorts the contents and values of relics.*

*b) Altering the relic’s landscape by cutting trees, quarrying stones, excavating, illegally erecting buildings and other activities that cause negative impacts on relics.*

Article 11 of the Decree No.98/2010/NĐ-CP identifies that:

*Relics are classified as follows:*

*1. Historical relics (relics associated with events and eminent persons)*

*2. Architectural and artistic works;*

*3. Archeological relics;*

*4. Scenic landscapes.*

Article 14 of the Decree No.98/2010/NĐ-CP identifies as follows:

*1. The delineation of relic protection zone I is carried out according to the following principles:*

a) *As for relics such as construction works and places associated with historical events and the life and career of eminent persons, the delineation of protection zone I must include buildings and places marking the outstanding developments of historical events or commemorative works of the eminent persons associated with those relics;*

b) *As for archeological relics, the delineation of protection zone I must include the area where relics and vestiges are found, and the topographic and landscape features are directly linked to the habitat of the creators of that archeological site;*

c) *As for relics such as artistic and architectural complexes or individual architectural works, the delineation of protection zone I must include architectural works, yards, gardens, ponds, lakes and other elements which are linked to the relics;*

d) *As for scenic landscapes, the delineation of protection zone I must ensure the integrity of the natural landscape, topographic and geographic features that contain bio-diversity and the typical ecosystem or physical traces of stages in the development history of the earth or the architectural works linked to the scenic landscapes.*

*As for relics consisting of a number of construction works and places scattered in a large area, the delineation of protection zone I must be done for each component of the relic.*

*2. Protection zone II constitutes the buffer zone, which surrounds or stands adjacent to zone I, in order to protect the landscape and the ecological environment of relics, and where the construction of facilities to serve the protection and promotion of the values of the relics is permitted.*

*The determination that a relic consists of only zone I applies when the relic is located in a residential area or adjacent to construction works that cannot be relocated.*

*3. The marking of relic protection zones must ensure the following principles:*

*a) The boundary between the relic protection zones and the buffer zones must be clearly defined in the field according to the records and maps of protection zone marking-off in dossiers on relics;*

*b) The landmark must be made from durable material and situated in a highly visible place;*

*c) The shape, color and size of the landmark must suit the landscape of the relic and not affect negatively the relic's original constituents.*

*The President of the provincial-level People's Committee shall organize the erection of the landmark.*

***1.3. Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP dated September 18,2012 by the Government detailing regulations on the competence, order, formulation procedures and approval of planning and project of preservation, renovation and restoration of historical and cultural relics. (Hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP)***

Article 3 of Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP regulates:

*“The basic principles of formulation, planning approval of project of preservation, renovation and restoration of historical and cultural relics:*

*1. Complying with provisions of Law on Construction, Law on Cultural Heritage, International Treaties of which the Socialist Republic of Vietnam is a member, and other provisions of relevant legislation.*

*2. Consistent with objectives of the strategies of socio-economic development, defense, security and development planning of sectors within the planning area that have been approved to ensure the technology infrastructure synchronization, unification and harmonization of spatial morphology and architecture of the region as well as to ensure the sustainability of landscape's environment, and harmonious combination between conservation and development in the region.*

*3. The planning of monument preservation, renovation and restoration must be formed and approved under the long-term orientation from 10 years to*

20 years to serve as a foundation for investment activities of preservation, renovation, restoration, exploitation and promotion of heritages values. The planning of monument preservation, renovation and restoration must be divided into every 5 - year planning, starting from 2010, to re-evaluate, consider and adjust (if necessary) to accommodate to the practical situation of monument protection, the construction planning and other specialized planning which are approved to be in effect or were implemented.

4. Planning, project, and economic - technical reports of monument preservation, renovation, and restoration must be based on the duty of best conserving original elements of monument to promote its values. Ensure the synchronization and unification of project, economic - technical reports as well as of the spatial architecture, the technology infrastructure system and surrounding environment of the region.

5. Planning, project, and economic - technical reports of monuments preservation, renovation, and restoration must comply with standards of monument preservation, renovation, and restoration, and furthermore, must be in accordance with the planning of monument preservation, renovation, and restoration.

6. Creating favorable conditions for heritages values protection and promotion".

Clause 2, Article 6 of Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP regulates:

*"The master plan of monument preservation, renovation and restoration (hereinafter referred to as the monument master plan) is a planning for a special national monument or a group of national or provincial relics forming a complex of monuments located in the same geographic area and having close relationship to history, culture and science"*<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> Master plan is a concept used in Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP, of which the Particular a, Clause 1, Article 12 stipulates that *"The Prime Minister approves policies, tasks of monument master plan, national special monument planning scheme and national monument planning scheme with large - scale investment "*

Complex of Huế Monuments is a national special monument group including many sites of relics and relic groups which have been recognized as national monuments. Therefore, *"The Master Plan of Huế Monuments Complex's Values Conservation and Promotion in the Period of 1996 - 2010 "and" Project of*

Article 11 of Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP regulates on the contents of Monument Master Plan as follows:

*“1. Foundations for the formulation of monument renovation plan:*

- a) Legal documents related to the planning;*
- b) Strategy, master plan of socio- economic development, defense and security, approved planning of local monuments system;*
- c) Approved tasks of monument master plan;*
- d) Regulations and standards of monument preservation, renovation and restoration.*

*2. Analysis, evaluation of current condition of monument and the land belonging to the monument include:*

- a) Results of surveys and researches on the characteristics and values of the monument; the roles of monument in the regional relation; technical condition, management, use and promotion of heritage values;*
- b) Analysis and evaluation of natural and social environment; socio-economic factors; current condition of land use; current condition of the technical infrastructure of the planning area;*
- c) Determining characteristics and typical values of the monument.*

*3. Conception, long-term goal and short-term goal of the monument master plan.*

*4. Determining the boundaries of the monument protection areas, proposal on the adjustment of expanding or narrowing the relic protection areas,*

---

*Adjusting the Master Plan of Huế Monuments Complex's Values Conservation and Promotion in the Period of 2010 - 2020" approved by the Prime Minister and implemented for many years with funding up to trillions VND is an important basis for management and conservation of the Heritage areas in both short terms and long term.*

Basically, some of contents in the master plan of Huế Monuments Complex have solved problems mentioned in this Management Plan. However, the Management Plan will also supplement contents not yet stated or addressed in the Master Plan, particularly the identification of factors affecting the heritages, to offer management and protection policies to eliminate or reduce to the maximum extent these factors.

*determining the natural landscape areas, restricted construction areas and new construction areas.*

*5. Orientation of monument preservation, renovation and restoration: The general direction for the whole planning area of monument preservation, renovation and restoration; the list of relics needed preservation, renovation and restoration, and extent of preservation, renovation and restoration of each monument item; principles and fundamental solutions for the preservation, renovation and restoration of monument.*

*6. Orientation of heritages values promotion associated with sustainable tourism development.*

*7. Orientation on spatial arrangement, new architectural construction, elevation, construction density, architectural form, building materials; orientation on renovation and construction of infrastructure system in the area of monument master plan.*

*8. Forecasting environmental impacts and proposing environmental protection measures to minimize the negative impacts on the environment in the area of monument master plan.*

*9. Proposing component projects, investment phases, prioritization of component projects and capital investment for the projects.*

*10. Proposing mechanisms, policies and measures to implement the monument master plan”.*

Article 19 of Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP regulates on the contents of Monument Master Plan as follows:

*“1. Description of monument renovation project includes the following contents:*

*a) Foundation for the formulation of monument renovation project;*

*b) Brief introduction about the monument and its historical, cultural and scientific values;*

*c) Detailed survey report on issues of history, archeology, culture, architecture and art, the process of construction, renovation, engineering and construction materials of the monument; evaluation on the technical condition, management and using situation of the monument, and other survey results under the provisions of Law on Construction.*

*d) Objectives of monument renovation project;*

*đ) Conception, principles of preservation, renovation and restoration of monument applied in the monument renovation project;*

*e) Design plan of monument overall ground; plan for monument violation clearance (if available); preservation, renovation, restoration plan for each item of the monument; protection plan of monument and its artifacts during the construction process; plan to maintain the operation of the monument during the construction process; plan for termite prevention and fire prevention; construction plan of new buildings and infrastructure;*

*g) Technology and materials solutions for the preservation, renovation and restoration of monument;*

*h) Architectural design plan for new construction with architectural requirements;*

*i) Environmental impact assessment of monument renovation project;*

*k) Estimate of cost and capital to implement the project;*

*l) Progress and process of project implementation;*

*m) Plan of maintenance, management, protection and promotion of monument values.*

*2. A set of colour photos sized 10 cm x 15 cm describing general construction, categories, typical structures, objects, and deterioration situation of the monument. The photos must be taken at the time of implementing survey and forming the project.*

*3. The basic design of the monument renovation project includes:*



*a) Drawings, photos relating to the formation, existence, changes and previous renovations of the monument;*

*b) Drawings of monument current condition include:*

*Drawing determining the location of monument on the provincial administration map with scale of 1: 50,000;*

*Drawing of current condition of monument general plan, scale of 1:500;*

*Drawing of plan current situation of monument construction items, plan current condition drawings of each item of the monument, the current condition elevation drawing of each item of the monument, the current condition cross-sectional drawing of each item of monument, current condition drawing of each part of monument items needed preservation, renovation and restoration, scale of 1:50.*

*c) Design drawing of monument preservation, renovation and restoration includes:*

*Design drawing of monument master plan with scale of 1: 500;*

*Plan design drawing of monument construction items, plan design drawing of each item, elevation design drawing of each item of the monument, the cross-sectional design drawing of each item of monument, design drawing of each part of monument items , scale of 1:50.*

*d) Design drawing of each new construction item under the provisions of Law on Construction*

*đ) Perspective drawing presented on A3 sized paper or bigger sizes”.*

Clauses 1 and 2, Article 22 of Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP regulate on making economic- technical reports of monument renovation instead of the formulation of monument renovation project stipulated in the aforementioned Article 19 as follows:

*“1. The economic- technical report of monument renovation of investment owner after being submitted competent authorities will be approved to receive investment decision in the following cases:*

*a) The preservation, renovation and restoration of monument are just at the extent of reinforcement, small repair of simple items and structures, do not affect the original constituents of the monument and not have to choose different options;*

*b) Purposes of renovation or building new constructions are aimed at serving the protection and promotion of monument values.*

*2. Contents of monument renovation economic -technical report include:*

*a) Foundation of making monument renovation economic -technical report;*

*b) Brief introduction about the monument and its historical, cultural and scientific values;*

*c) Preliminary survey report on issues of architecture and art, engineering, construction materials of monument; evaluation of technical condition and other survey results under the provisions of the Law of Construction;*

*d) Objectives of monument preservation, renovation and restoration;*

*đ) Preservation, renovation and restoration plan for each item of the monument; protection plan of monument and artifacts during the construction process; plans of termite prevention and fire prevention; construction plan for new infrastructures and buildings;*

*e) Estimate of cost and capital to implement the preservation, renovation and restoration of monument.”*

Competence, formulation procedure, appraisal and approval, including (1) guidelines on the formulation of monument renovation project, (2) monument renovation project, and (3) economic - technical report of monument renovation, stipulated in Article 17 of Decree No. 70/2012 / ND-CP are as follows:

*“1. Formulation, appraisal and approval competence of guidelines on monument renovation project formulation and monument renovation project:*

*a) Monument renovation project with large capital must be approved in term of guideline by the Prime Minister under the provisions;*

*b) Chairman of provincial People's Committee or Head of Ministry assigned to directly manage monuments approves the guideline of monument renovation project formulation, monument renovation project and is responsible for organization of monument renovation project formulation under their managerial competence;*

*c) Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry comes to term with guideline of monument renovation project formulation, appraisal of national special monument renovation project;*

*d) Director of the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism comes to term with guidelines of provincial monument renovation project formulation, appraisal of provincial monument renovation project.*

*2. Procedures of formulation, appraisal, approval of guideline on monument renovation project formulation and monument renovation project:*

*a) For national special monuments, national monuments, Chairman of the provincial People's Committee or Head of Ministry or related branch assigned to directly manage the monuments submits a written request enclosed with 01 (a) dossier to the Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism in person or by mail.*

*Within 30 working days from the date of receiving the written request and valid dossier, the Minister of Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism is responsible for considering the agreement of guideline on monument renovation project formulation or the appraisal of monument renovation project.*

*b) For provincial monuments under the management competence of the provincial People's Committee, the Director of the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism submits a written request enclosed with 01 (a) dossier to the Chairman of the provincial People's Committee in person or by mail.*

*Within 30 working days from the date of receiving the written request and valid dossier, the Chairman of the provincial People's Committee is responsible for the approval of guideline on monument renovation project formulation or the approval of monument renovation project.*

c) *For provincial monuments under the management competence of the Ministry or related branch, the Head of the agency assigned to directly manage the monument submits a written request enclosed with 01 (a) dossier and written assessment provided by the Director of Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism to the Head of Ministry, branch assigned to directly manage the monument in person or by mail.*

*Within 30 working days from the date of receiving the written request and valid dossier, Head of Ministry, branch assigned to directly manage the monument is responsible for the approval of guideline on monument renovation project formulation or the approval of monument renovation project.*

*3. Competence, procedures of formulation, appraisal, approval of guideline on economic- technical report formulation are implemented similarly to the regulations on procedures of formulation, appraisal, approval of guideline on monument renovation project formulation and monument renovation project mentioned in this Article".*

***1.4. Circular No. 18/2012/TT-BVHTTDL dated December 28, 2012 of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism detailing a number of regulations on preservation, renovation and restoration of monuments (Hereinafter referred to as Circular No. 18/2012/TT-BVHTTDL)***

Articles 3 and 4 of Circular No. 18/2012 / TT-BVHTTDL stipulate principles on activities of monument design and renovation, and principles on activities of monument renovation construction as follows:

*"Article 3: Principles of monument design and renovation*

*1. Complying with regulations of Law on Cultural Heritage, Law on Construction and other relevant legislation.*

*2. Monument design and renovation must be established on the foundation of survey results, direct or indirect documents related to the monument, and must comply with the contents of approved project of monument renovation.*

*3. Traditional technical and technological solutions applied for monument renovation before are preferential. In case of traditional technical and*

*technological solutions not meeting the requirements for monument preservation, renovation and restoration, then it is permitted to apply appropriate modern technical and technological solutions tested in practice and not affecting characteristics and values of the monument.*

*4. The design process of monument renovation is carried out simultaneously with the construction process to promptly adjust changes so that they are appropriate to new emergence and discoveries of the monument.*

*5. It is preferential to preserve, reinforce the monument prior to applying plan of monument renovation or restoration.*

*6. Regularly consulting historical witnesses, experts, artisans during the monument renovation design process."*

*"Article 4. Principles of monument renovation construction activities*

*1. Complying with approved renovation design of monument, regulations on quality management, progress schedule, construction volume, workplace safety and other relevant regulations during the construction process.*

*2. It is preferential to apply traditional construction methods, focus on preservation of original constituents of monument and protection of monument structures during the renovation construction process.*

*3. When there are any new discoveries or emergence of the monument different from the approved renovation design, construction unit and supervision consultancy have to promptly inform the investor of monument renovation project. In the case of adjusting the renovation design of monument, the project investor carefully considers to adjust appropriately the construction period to ensure construction quality.*

*4. Monument renovation construction activities are implemented under the supervision of the local community living in the area of the monument and institutions and individuals having enough eligible capacity under the provisions of Law on Construction, and under the Law on Cultural Heritage.*

5. *Regularly consulting historical witnesses, experts, artisans during the monument renovation construction process.*

6. *Recording fully all construction activities of the monument renovation carried out at the construction site into the Construction Dairy and As-built Document.*

7. *Ensuring safety of visitors and monument"*

Circular No. 18/2012 / TT-BVHTTDL also stipulates a range of issues on the field of monument restoration and embellishment that are related to the conservation of Huế Monuments Complex, including:

- Articles 5-16 regulate on: *Capability conditions and conditions for professional practice of organizations and individuals involved in monument planning, monument renovation project, economic- technical reports of monument renovation, monument renovation design and construction.*

- Articles 17-23 regulate on: *Record of monument renovation design, contents of monument renovation design and competent to appraise the Record of monument renovation design.*

- Articles 24-27 regulate on: *Construction of the monument restoration.*

With the strict regulations stipulated in the Law on Cultural Heritage and the aforementioned guiding documents, the thing that Huế Monuments Complex is recognized as World Heritage, National Special Monuments, of which including a range of national monuments clearly defined the protection zones I and II, has created an important legal framework for the long - term management and conservation of the entire heritage area of Huế monuments Complex.

***1.5. Regulations on Archaeological Exploration and Excavations issued by the Decision No. 86/2008/QĐ-BVHTTDL dated 30/12/2008 of the Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism (hereinafter referred to as Regulations for Archaeological Excavations No. 86/2008/QĐ-BVHTTDL).***

Article 5 of Regulations for Archaeological Excavations No. 86/2008 / QD-BVHTTDL stipulates prohibited acts as follows:

*“1. Exploration and excavation of archaeological sites without permission of the Minister of Culture, Sports and Tourism Ministry (case of archaeological explorations and excavations) and of the Director of the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism (case of emergency archaeology excavations).*

*2. Arbitrarily conducting search, excavation which can distort, present risks or destroy the archaeological sites, archaeological remains; illegal acts of exchange, purchase, sale and transportation of archaeological remains.*

*3. Abusing activities of archaeological research, exploration and excavation to infringe upon national interests and damage to natural resources, the environment, and human health.*

*4. Obstructing the archaeological management, protection, research, exploration and excavation of authorized organizations and individuals.*

Article 15 of Regulations for Archaeological Excavations No. 86/2008 / QD-BVHTTDL stipulates responsibilities of organizations and individuals on the issues of archaeological exploration and excavations as follows:

*“1. The implementation of the archaeological exploration and excavation must follow contents inscribed in the archaeological exploration and excavation license. In case of changing the organization or chairman of excavation, the excavation period and adjustment of the excavation area, licensed organization must submit a written request and be approved in writing by the agency providing the archaeological exploration and excavation license.*

*2. Performing properly the archaeological excavation process described in Article 17 of this Regulation.*

*3. Organizations licensed the archaeological exploration and excavation license and the chairman of archaeological exploration and excavation are responsible for making preliminary report and archaeological excavation record.*

4. *Collecting, preserving and handing over all collected archaeological remains and archaeological excavation records to the agencies assigned to preserve archaeological remains as written in the archaeological exploration and excavation license.*

5. *Implementing propaganda to help local people living in the area of archaeological site understand the meaning and value of cultural heritage and raise their sense of responsibility to protect the cultural heritage of the locality.*

6. *Ensuring not to adversely affect the natural environment of archaeological excavation area.*

7. *Collaborating closely with the Commune People's Committee, Department of Culture and Information and the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism during the period of exploration, excavation and artifacts processing to serve research activity and the promotion of long-term values at museum or archaeological site.*

8. *Do not publish and disseminate conclusions about the excavation site without the written agreement of the Department of Cultural Heritage ".*

Article 19 of Regulations for Archaeological Excavations No. 86/2008 / QĐ-BVHTTDL stipulates the protection, management and processing of archaeological site after exploration and excavation, including:

*“1. After finishing the archaeological exploration and excavation, the agency directly managing the archaeological site is responsible for making plan of protection, management, and values promotion the value of the archaeological site that has been explored and excavated .*

*2. Contents of archaeological site protection, management, and values promotion after exploration, excavations include:*

*a) Apply measures to preserve the architectural ruins, archaeological remains and other archaeological traces that can not be moved;*



*b) Filling the excavated hole up to the previous height level, except it is necessary to keep the status quo of excavated hole to serve the research activity and display of the archaeological site;*

*c) Placing excavation location markers and signposts of the archaeological site. Signposts indicate the names of archaeological site, excavation year, longitude and latitude of the excavation hole.*

*3. In the case that the archaeological site is qualified to document proposal for historical – cultural monument classification, the Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism in the archaeological site area is responsible for submitting necessary documents to authorized agencies to classify the archaeological site based on provisions ".*

In addition, the Regulations for Archaeological Excavations No. 86/2008 / QD-BVHTTDL also regulates a range of issues related to regulations on responsibilities of agencies, organizations and individuals in the management and protection of archaeological sites and remains (Article 4), conditions for organizations and individuals to conduct archaeological exploration and excavation activities (Article 11), procedures and applications for archaeological exploration and excavation license (Article 12), the process of archaeological excavation (Article 17), the adjustment and preservation of archaeological remains after exploration and excavation (Article 20), management and use of archaeological remains (Article 21), making preliminary report and archaeological excavation dossier (Article 22).

## **2. Law on Forest Protection and the Implementation Guidelines**

### ***2.1. Law on Forest Protection and Development***

The forest protection is specified in Article 12 of the Law on Forest Protection and Development with the prohibited acts, including:

- "- Illegal deforestation and illegal forest exploitation.*
- Illegal acts of breeding, raising, hunting, killing, trapping, capture wildlife.*

- *Collecting specimens in the forest illegally.*
- *Illegal destruction of forest resources and ecosystem.*
- *Violations of regulations on forest fire preventing and fighting.*
- *Illegal exploitation of forestry landscape, environment and services”.*

***2.2. Regulations on Forest Management promulgated together with Decision No. 186/2006 / QĐ-TTg dated 14/8/2006 of the Prime Minister (hereinafter referred to as Forest Management Regulations).***

Clause 3 of Article 13 stipulates on special - use forest classification as follows:

*"3. Protected landscape area*

*a) Protected landscape area is the area including forest and natural habitat on mainland, wetlands or island formed due to the interaction between humans and nature, and bringing the forest and the habitat increasingly high values on aesthetic, ecology, culture and history.*

*b) Protected landscape area is established to protect, maintain and develop the traditional relationship between humans and nature to serve activities of religion, recreation and entertainment, sightseeing, study and ecotourism.*

*c) Protected landscape area is established based on the criteria and indicators: history, traditional cultures and habitat; the natural land area of the protected landscape area and the proportion of agricultural land area, residential land area compared to the natural land area of the landscape area. "*

Eco-tourism activities taking place in special-use forests are stipulated clearly in Clause 2 of Article 22 of the Regulations on Forest Management as follows:

*“Project of eco-tourism development in special-use forests must meet the following requirements:*

*a) Not adversely affecting the objectives of biodiversity conservation, landscape environment and protective functions of the forests.*

*b) The building of constructions serving tourism purposes must follow the forest planning approved by the competent authorities".*

### **3. Biodiversity Law and implementation guiding documents**

#### **3.1. Biodiversity Law**

Biodiversity Law regulates on biodiversity conservation and sustainable development; Rights and obligations of organizations, households and individuals in biodiversity conservation and sustainable development.

According to provisions of Clause 1, Article 3 of the Biodiversity Law: *"Biodiversity Conservation is the protection of the diversity of important, unique or representative natural ecosystem; protection of regular or seasonal natural habitats of wildlife, landscape environment and the unique beauty of nature; the breeding, planting, raising endangered, rare and precious species on the prioritized protection list; storage and long term storage of genetic specimens "*.

Article 5 of the Biodiversity Law regulates:

*"Condition policy on conservation and sustainable development of biodiversity:*

*1. Prioritizing the conservation of important, unique or representative natural ecosystem of an ecoregion, the conservation of endangered, rare and precious species on the prioritized protection list; ensuring the control over access to genetic resources.*

*2. Ensuring the funding for basic surveys, observations, statistics, database building of biodiversity and biodiversity conservation planning; investing in technical, physical facilities for the reservation zone and biodiversity conservation facility of the Condition; ensuring the participation of local people in the process of building and implementing the planning of biodiversity conservation.*

*3. Encouraging and ensuring the legitimate rights and interests of organizations and individuals who invest, apply advances in science,*

*technology, traditional knowledge on the conservation and sustainable development of biodiversity.*

*4. Combining the ecotourism development with poverty alleviation, ensuring stable lives for households and individuals living lawfully in the conservation zone; the sustainable development of the buffer zone of the reserve.*

*5. Promoting domestic and international resources for the conservation and sustainable development of biodiversity ".*

Article 7 of the Biodiversity Law regulates:

" Prohibited acts on biodiversity:

*1. Hunting, fishing,exploitation of wildlife in the strictly protected zone of the reserve, except for purpose of scientific research; land encroachment, destruction of landscape and natural ecosystem, rearing and growing invasive alien species in the reserve.*

*2. Building construction, house in the strictly protected zone of the reserve, except for the purpose of national defense and security; illegally building construction, house in the ecological restoration subdivision of the reserve.*

*3. Survey, exploration and exploitation of minerals; raising livestock and poultry in farming scale, industry scale of aquaculture; residing illegally, polluting the environment in the strictly protected subdivision and ecological restoration subdivision of the reserve.*

*4. Illegally hunting, fishing, exploiting parts of the body, killing, trading, transporting endangered, rare and precious species on the prioritized protection list; illegal advertising, marketing and consumption of products originating from the endangered, rare and precious species on the prioritized protection list*

*5. Illegal captive breeding and artificial propagation of wild animals and plants on the list of prioritized protect species that are endangered, rare and precious .*

*6. Importing, releasing illegally the genetically modified organisms and genetic specimens of genetically modified organisms.*

*7. Importing and expanding invasive alien species.*

*8. Unauthorized access to genetic resources on the list of endangered, rare and precious species that are prioritized to protect.*

*9. Illegal conversion of land use purpose in the reserve ".*

***3.2. Decree No. 65/2010 / ND-CP dated 11/6/2010 detailing the provisions and implementation guiding documents of some Articles of the Biodiversity Law (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 65/2010 / ND-CP)***

In addition to the provisions of the Biodiversity Law, the management and protection of ecology and species are also clearly conditioned in sub-law documents.

Article 10 of Decree No. 65/2010 / ND-CP regulates:

*"Rights and obligations of households and individuals living lawfully in the conservation area:*

*1. Households and individuals living lawfully in the reserve are the ones entitled to use the land legally in accordance with the provisions of the Land Law.*

*2. Households and individuals living lawfully in the reserve are entitled to the rights and must perform the obligations stipulated in Article 30 of the Biodiversity Law and the following rights and obligations:*

*a) Be prioritized to exploit land, water surface and forest to serve agriculture, aquaculture and other purposes not prohibited by law;*

*b) Be prioritized to establish exploitation project of the reserve to serve ecotourism activities and other services which are not contrary to the provisions of law;*

*c) Be prioritized to recruit and participate in the management of the reserve;*

*d) Be shared benefits from activities of tourism operation, exploitation of resources, projects supporting the reserve, access to genetic resources in the reserve and other benefits under the provisions of law ;*

*d) Obligation of protecting the forest under the provisions of the law on forest protection and development. "*

Article 13 of Decree No. 65/2010 / ND-CP stipulates:

*"Regulations concerning the management and protection of species prioritized to protect:*

*1. The investigation, inventory and assessment on condition of prioritized protected species are regulated as follows:*

*a) For the prioritized protected species, implementing the investigation, inventory and assessment on habitat condition once every 5 years to have appropriate protection plans;*

*b) Zoning the area of reserve establishment project for the regular or seasonal natural habitats of prioritized protected species.*

*2. The dossier compilation of prioritized protected species is stipulated as follows:*

*a) The dossier compilation of each prioritized protected specie must be implemented separately with contents in terms of quantity, distribution, habitat condition, extinction risks, and other contents related to the conservation of that specie;*

*b) Profile of the prioritized protected species must be updated once every 5 years based on practical survey data;*

#### **4. Law on Tourism**

Tourism Law stipulates on issues of tourism resources and tourism activities; rights and obligations of tourists, organizations, individuals carrying on tourism business, other organizations and individuals engaging in activities related to tourism.

Article 7 of the Tourism Law regulates:

*"The involvement of local communities in the tourism development:*

*1. The local community has the right to participate in and be entitled to legitimate benefits from tourism activities; having responsibility to protect tourism resources, local cultural identity; maintaining social security and order, and environmental sanitation to create tourism attraction.*

*2. The local community is facilitated to focus on tourism development, restoration and promotion of folk arts and cultures, traditional crafts, production of local goods to serve tourists which contributes to raising living standards and morale life of local people ".*

Article 9 of the Tourism Law regulates:

*" Tourism environment protection:*

*1. Natural environment, social humanistic environment need to be protected, renovated and developed to ensure the tourism environment to be green, clean, beautiful, in security, safe, healthy and civilized.*

*2. Ministries and ministerial-level agencies with their own competences issues regulations aimed at protecting,renovating and developing the tourism environment.*

*3. People's Committees at all levels take measures to protect, renovate and develop the tourism environment appropriately to the local practical situation.*

*4. Tourism business organizations, individuals are responsible for collection and treatment of waste generated during business operation; remedying negative impacts on the environment caused by their operation activities; taking measures to prevent and combat social evils occurring within their places.*

*5. Tourists, local communities and other organizations, individuals have responsibility for protecting and preserving the landscape, environment, cultural identity, traditions and customs of the nation; behaving properly to raise the beautiful image of the country, people and tourism of Vietnam".*

## **5. Law on Environmental Protection**

Law on Environmental Protection regulates on environmental protection activities; policies, measures and resources to protect the environment; rights and obligations of organizations, households and individuals in environmental protection.

Article 7 of the Law on Environmental Protection regulates:

*“ Prohibited acts include:*

- 1. Illegal destruction and exploitation of forests and natural resources.*
- 2. Exploiting and fishing biological resources by means of destruction tools and methods; exploiting and fishing biological resources not in accordance with harvest season and production regulated by law.*
- 3. Exploitation, trading, consumption, and use of rare and precious wild plant and animal species on the banned list prescribed by State authorized agencies.*
- 4. Disposal of toxic, radioactive waste and other hazardous substances not in accordance with provisions on burial site and technical processes of environmental protection.*
- 5. Disposal of unqualifiedly treated waste into the environment; disposal of toxic, radioactive waste and other hazardous substances into the land and water.*
- 6. Discharging exhaust fumes, smoke, dust containing hazardous substances into the air; spreading radiation, radioactive and ionized substances exceeding the environmental protection standards*
- 7. Cause noise, vibration exceeding the permissible standards*
- 8. Import of machinery, equipments, vehicles which do not meet environmental standards.*
- 9. Import and transit of waste in any shape or form.*



*10. Import and transit of animals, plants that have not put into quarantine and microorganisms not listed on the permitted list.*

*11. Manufacturing and trading products hazardous to humans, animals and ecosystem; production and use of materials, construction materials containing toxic elements exceeding permitted level.*

*12. Damaging natural heritages, natural conservation areas*

*13. Damaging constructions, equipments and facilities used for environmental protection activities.*

*14. Carrying out illegal activities and living in the prohibited area determined by authorized agencies due to its high level of environmental hazards to human health and life.*

*15. Hiding the acts of environmental destruction, obstructing environmental protection activities, falsifying information leading to negative consequences for the environment.*

*16. Other prohibited acts of environmental protection under the provisions of law”.*

Article 45 of the Law on Environmental Protection regulates:

*“Environmental protection in tourism activities:*

*1. Organizations and individuals managing and exploiting tourist resorts, tourist destinations area responsible for implementing the following environmental protection measures:*

*a) Posting regulations and implementation guidelines on environmental protection in the tourist areas, tourist attractions;*

*b) Installing, arranging sufficiently and appropriately sanitation facilities and waste collection facilities;*

*c) Arranging staff responsible for environment cleaning.*

*2. Travelers are responsible for implementing the following provisions:*

*a) Complying with the regulations and guidelines for environmental protection of the tourist resorts, tourist destinations;*

*b) Throwing garbage into designated places;*

*c) Keeping the tourist areas clean;*

*d) Do not destroy the landscape, nature conservation areas, natural heritages and wildlife in the tourist resorts, tourist destinations”.*

## **6. Law on Mineral Resources and the Implementation Guidelines**

### **6.1. Law on Mineral Resources**

Article 12 and 13 of the Mineral Law regulate:

*“Article 12. National general planning of minerals exploration and exploitation*

*1. The planning formulation of minerals exploration and in the whole country must follow the following principles:*

*- Protecting the environment, natural landscapes, historical - cultural relics and other natural resources.*

*Article 13. The planning of exploitation and using of each type and group of minerals used as construction materials and planning of exploitation and using of each type, group of other minerals*

*1. The planning formulation of exploitation and using of each type and group of minerals used as construction materials and planning formulation of exploitation and using of each type, group of other minerals must follow the following principles:*

*- Protecting the environment, natural landscapes, historical - cultural relics and other natural resources”*

**6.2. Decree No. 15/2012/ND-CP of the Government dated 09/3/2012 detailing Regulations on the Implementation of the Mineral Law (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 15/2012 / ND-CP)**

Clause 2, Article 9 of Decree No. 15/2012 / ND-CP regulates:

*“The planning formulation of exploration, exploitation and using of minerals belonging to provinces and municipalities must follow these following principles:*

*- Protecting the environment, natural landscapes, historical - cultural relics and other natural resources”.*

**7. Decree No.818/QD-TTg on June 07, 2010 of the Prime Minister about the Proposal of adjusting the conservation planning and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics in the 2010-2020 period (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 818/QD-TTg)**

Article 1 of Decree No. 818/QD-TTg regulates:

*“Article 1. Approving the Proposal of adjusting conservation planning and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics in the 2010 - 2020 period with the following fundamental contents:*

*1. Name of the Proposal: Adjusting conservation planning and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics in the 2010 - 2020 period.*

*2. Point of view:*

*- The complex of Huế monuments and Huế royal court music are an invaluable property of the country, recognized by UNESCO as the cultural heritage of humanity. Conserving perfectly the cultural heritage of Huế Ancient Capital is the preservation of cultural assets of the nation, and contributing to preserve and enrich the cultural treasures of humankind. The processes of preserving and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics shall thoroughly take the Communist Party’s views on preserving the nation’s cultural identity into consideration as well as abide by the International Convention for Conservation of cultural heritage of humankind;*

*- The relics of Huế ancient Capital shall be conserved in the unified master plans; arranging in a hierarchy, classifying the heritages needed to be conserved in order to keep the original form of historical and cultural values of inherent architecture and art; the relics should be simulated by innovative*

*solutions; traditional and modern materials can be interchangeably combined without changing their historical, cultural and artistic values as the originals. Pay attention to regularly protecting the relics from threats such as destruction, loss, invasion, natural disasters, fires, damages... Prioritize programs and methods against degradation in combination with restoration based on science; only reconstruct particularly valuable monuments after having enough scientific foundations.*

- Conservation planning of cultural values of Huế Ancient Capital is not separated from the preservation of other existing cultural relics such as Cham towers, temples, communal house in the village, pagodas, shrines... and related historical relics of revolution and war.*

- Protecting and restoring the urban architecture landscapes and natural landscapes in the master plans of building Huế city without separating from architecture landscapes and natural ones of Huế Monuments Complex.*

- Programs of scientific research, educational advocacy on history, culture – art of Huế Monuments Complex shall be attached to duties and plans of economic – social development of the province.*

- Conserving and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics shall be implemented simultaneously, synchronously on all three aspects: tangible cultural heritage, intangible cultural heritage, urban and natural landscape heritage.*

- Conserving and promoting the values of Huế ancient relics shall be tied to economic growth, and to cultural tourism development, creating the strength in economic restructuring of Thừa Thiên Huế province and promoting all advantages, preparing fully conditions for integration and stable development.*

### *3. Objectives of the Proposal:*

#### *a) Long-term objectives:*

- To conserve cultural heritage of Huế Ancient Capital*

*- To promote all precious values of Huế cultural heritage, including the tangible cultural heritage, intangible cultural heritage, urban and natural landscape heritage in education, preserving the nation's traditions and cultural identity and increasing the level of people's cultural enjoyment.*

*b) Short-term objectives:*

*- To define research boundaries, scopes and subjects of conservation and exploitation;*

*- To make conservation and replenishment plans of the relics systems of Huế Ancient Capital in the master plan of Huế city in the coming years and in the future.*

*- To identify investment contents in every renovation stage, combining with reconstructing and promoting the relic values in terms of tangible cultural heritage, intangible cultural heritage and environmental landscapes.*

*4. Research subjects and scopes*

*a) Research subjects:*

*- Tangible cultural heritages;*

*- Intangible cultural heritages, official works of culture and art, folklores, legends, traditions...;*

*- Cultural heritages of landscapes – environment.*

*b) Research scopes:*

*- Huế Capital Citadel and Royal Citadel;*

*- Royal tombs of Nguyễn Dynasty's Emperors from Gia Long to Khải Định reign;*

*- Architectural works, others related to royal architectures and works that closely connect to the foundation and development process of Huế Ancient Capital;*

- *Natural landscapes, ecological environment that constitute the uniqueness of Hué Ancient Capital;*

- *History, traditions, culture via official and folk works of culture and art.*

*5. Main investment contents and solutions of the Proposal from 2010 to 2020:*

*a) Continue to carry out the remaining work according to Decree No.105/TTg on February 12, 1996 of the Prime Minister*

*- Stage I: 2010-2012:*

*+ Make records of all existing and lost relics; put all documentary systems into database;*

*+ Complete setting up landmarks and zoning to protect relics, totally examine the households that are living in area I and implement the solutions to stretching the inhabitant density, move inhabitants out of the key areas;*

*+ Preserve all degrading relics;*

*+ Continue to complete the renovation of half-way through works;*

*+ Restore the court halls in Forbidden City in the priority orders as there are sufficient documentations and necessary scientific basis, architectural works in the Citadel and other royal tombs, works related to royal architecture and architectural works going with the foundation and development process of Hué ancient Capital;*

*+ Improve, restore the natural landscapes and invest on upgrading the infrastructure at the Citadel, royal tombs, and other relics;*

*+ Make fiches of all realia to store and manage by using computer software. Extend to exhibit these kinds at relic sites;*

+ *Implement programs of scientific research, educational advocacy, foreign cooperation, and human resources training with an aim to conserve and promote the tangible and intangible cultural values.*

- *Stage II: 2013-2017:*

+ *Continue to renovate and restore relic works, artistic decorations, and architectural structures;*

+ *Improve, restore the natural landscapes and perfect the infrastructure of the Citadel, imperial tombs and other relics.*

+ *Continue to implement scientific research programs, educational advocacy, foreign cooperation, human resources training with an aim to conserve and develop the tangible and intangible cultural values according to approved plans.*

- *Stage III: 2018-2020*

+ *Complete the restoration and upgrading of ruins with typical values. Recover the primary state of important works in the Citadel according to the former Imperial City's architecture and approved conservation plans.*

+ *Improve and restore natural landscapes of the Imperial City, imperial tombs and other relics;*

+ *Completely build and upgrade infrastructure at the relics.*

*b) Some main solutions to implementing the proposal:*

- *Focus on investing in typical and key relics when there is enough historical and scientific documentation. Complete architectural works, infrastructure, gardening landscapes and furniture display in order to enhance the values, and make new and effective changes after taking into use.*

+ *Socialize the conservation of cultural heritage on the basis of approved plans and projects in order to facilitate the simultaneous participation in the*

*conservation and promotion of cultural heritage values of social and international organizations, and the community;*

- Promote activities of propaganda, dissemination and education for citizens to raise their awareness of responsibility, volunteer, and strict self-discipline in executing the government's regulations of cultural heritage conservation;*

- Extent cooperation with local and international organizations in the field of heritage conservation. Plan to train scientific staff who get enough experience and professional ability to absorb the advanced technology, effectively apply to the field of conserving, restoring and promoting the relic values;*

- Enhance the creation of new products to attract tourists and link tourism and cultural heritage;*

- Be proactive and active in preventing the relics from the risk of natural disasters, fires, and other adverse factors, together with giving them safety guaranty.*

#### *6. Investment capital*

- State budgets (Government supporting capital for culture, and capital from the national target program on culture ...);*

- Local budgets (Provincial capital, capital based on the promotion of relic values from Hué Monuments Conservation Centre and other legal sources of capital);*

- Funds and other domestic and international sources of legal mobilization;*

*The official determination of total investment capital is based on specific considered and approved projects.*

#### *7. Proposal implementing duration: from the year 2010 to 2020”.*



**8. Decree No. 1381 / QD - UBND dated 09/7/2009 of the People's Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province ratified the general planning of the landscape areas along the banks of the Hương River from Thuan An estuary to Gia Long Tomb, Thừa Thiên Huế (hereinafter referred to as Decree No. 1381 /QD - UBND).**

Item 5 and 6 of Article 1 of Decree No. 1381/QD-UBND claims:

*“5. Space orientation of landscape architecture and management regulations:*

a) Separate functional areas:

- Southwest area (defined from Gia Long Tomb to Kim Long): is the area of conservation, restoration, controlled construction, organizing cultural and spiritual activities, honoring the values of relics combined with appropriate tourism exploitations.

+ *Conserve and exploit the area of tombs, historical and cultural relics with an aim to promote their values; restore present surrounding residential areas, do not develop any more new residence; build private service sites outside the protective belt of each relic area.*

+ *Upgrade existing residential villages in the region, limit the formation of focal residential sites; maintain reasonably construction density of about 20% to 30%.*

+ *Encourage to exploit the housing architecture in accordance with traditional architecture, use local materials; limited height from one to two stories.*

+ *Develop and newly plant protection trees along the riverbank, using mostly indigenous trees; arrange stopovers at the clustering points near tombs; connect the tree systems along the river with green trees in adjacent gardens and forests.*

+ *Construct paths along the river; upgrade the system of stone embankments at the areas with serious erosion; construct new soft embankment systems combined with planting grasses to avoid the landslide of riverbanks; respect the natural terrain of the area, organize marina systems near the relics; lay trash bins, break benches, lampposts along these green trees; construct the system of key works with the forms of traditional architecture.*

- *Huế City (from Kim Long to Gia Hoi): is a developed area that bears in itself the job of conservation, restoration, and maintaining the typical features of Huế Imperial City.*

+ *Space along the riverside is mainly comprised of the systems of green parks, footpaths and architectural works that have controlled height to ensure the general harmony; do not build any new sites along the North bank across from the Citadel; regulate suitable height for works on the main scenery sites along the South bank to ensure not to shield the vision; encourage opening green trees on water surface; relocate or resettle sampan residents; enhance environmental and urban landscapes sanitation.*

+ *Renovate, and put the available infrastructure systems underground; newly construct, arrange waste collecting points, landscape lighting systems; lay marinas, bus stops in reasonable distances without affecting the surrounding landscapes.*

- *The lagoon ecology to the northeast (from Gia Hoi to Thuan An estuary): is the agro-ecological space with riverside villages, lagoons, estuaries; the area of biodiversity which facilitates marine tourism development and aquaculture.*

+ *Develop beach resorts, lagoon eco-tourism, food court, water amusement activities; organize a service site to the west of Thuan An port.*

+ *Develop new marinas, riverside footpaths; plant new trees along the river together with the surrounding natural greenery.*

+ *Plan villages according to clustering style with moderate sizes*

*and traditional rural housing; building density does not exceed 45 %; form agro-ecological regions combined with flood drainage area in Phu Mau, Phu Thanh, and Phu Duong communes.*

*+ Do not build urban sites or house complex that affect the landscapes as well as the flow of regional flood drainage.*

*+ Build a uniform system of infrastructure in the area, organize to connect key sites; put the system of technological infrastructure underground; build adequate finished grade for important key works to avoid flooding.*

*b) Specific sites:*

*- A group of tombs and relics: absolutely abide by the belt of relic protection; plant indigenous trees in the buffer zone; form service sites outside the protection belt with traditional architecture and in harmony with existing relics; adequately connect the relics with service sites and land and river traffic systems.*

*- Vong Canh Hill and Bau Ho Mount: respect the natural terrain, form a green park with various services to meet the community's demands such as sightseeing, taking a rest, playing, exploring nature and history; build a cluster of services combined with the marinas to the south of the area in small scopes and traditional architecture; connect service sites with tomb sites and outside traffic systems; embellish, restore villages to the south of Vong Canh Hill but do not build new ones; continue to improve the study of relics in the area.*

*- The area near the Citadel: develop and newly plant a strip of green trees, available trees along the riverbanks and indigenous trees; administer the planning of the works in the area; form marinas together with small-scale services; in some particularly sensitive places such as Cồn Hén or Cồn Dã Viên, specifically plan the landscape areas as follows:*

*+ Cồn Hén: studied to form high-quality tourism services.*

+ *Cồn Dã Viên: studied to form a green park and cultural services; abide by the approved detailed planning.*

+ *Landscape areas: follow separate regulations; restrict to newly build sites that shield the sight.*

- *Bao Vinh ancient town: recover architectural forms and landscapes in the area, support the habitants in job restructuring in order to restore the former image of the town, do not build new and modern sites in the area.*

- *Thuận An town: abide by the approved detailed town planning; explore beach tourism along the seaside; build small service sites combining with lagoon tourism along the lagoon; avoid affecting the flood drainage system while dealing with works in the area.*

#### *6. Development orientation of technological infrastructure networks:*

##### *a) Technological preparations:*

- *Scraping: based on the approved planning, the height limit along the corridor of the Hương River's banks differs in different areas, as follows:*

+ *To the west of Huế city: The building height limit is 3,4m.*

+ *In the city: The building height limit is 2,7m.*

+ *To the east of Huế city: The building height limit is 2,2m.*

- *Rain drainage system: use the half-private and self-flown drainage system; divide it into several drainage basins that lead to the Hương River and exit into the South China Sea.*

+ *The old urban area uses the public drainage system.*

+ *Other new building sites use separate drainage systems.*

+ *The tributaries flowing into the Hương River shall be dredged and widened for rapid flood drainage.*

*b) Transportation:*

*- Organize a transport system that conveniently links with two paths along the riverside leading to relics, tourism services, amusement services and riverside residential areas, ensure the systemization, synchronization and do not affect negatively on the riverside landscapes, combine different types of water and road transports.”*

**9. Decree No. 2318/QĐ-UB dated 07/10/1999 of the People’s Committee of Thừa Thiên Huế Province promulgates the regulations on construction management in accordance with the detailed planning project of Huế Imperial City (hereinafter referred to as Decree 2318/QĐ-UB).**

To administer the building plans in Huế Imperial City, Decree 2318/QĐ-UB regulates:

*“Article 8: In residential areas:*

*Land in the areas of 4 Imperial wards includes 2 types:*

*Land of garden houses and land of adjacent households located along the main roads such as Đinh Tiên Hoàng, Mai Thúc Loan, Nguyễn Trãi.*

*Regulations on using criteria and architecture of these 2 types of land:*

*1. Households with an area of  $\leq 200m^2$*

*a) Criteria of land use:*

*- Land area: 115,49 ha*

*- Building density:  $<30\%$*

*- Maximum number of storeys is 2 (height  $h \leq 11m$  including the steep roof)*

*- Coefficient of land use: 0,5*

- Distance between the building line and the total land requirement boundary: 4m

*b) Requirements of planning and architecture:*

- Remain existing ancient works

- Restore, renovate and arrange to use adequately. Strictly ban the destruction or appearance change of the listed and ranked cultural heritages and architectures. Strictly control and minimize the fact of changing the garden houses into box-styled houses of the commercial neighbourhood.

- The general architectural works shall respect the following typical features:

+ Houses with steep and brick roofs

+ Shapes, decorating patterns, colours, fences, gates: beautiful, simple, suitable with landscapes and ancient architecture.

+ Encouraged to build fences using green trees, flowers, shade trees, and fruit trees.

*2. Adjacent households:*

*a) Criteria of land use:*

- Land area: 80,93 ha

- Building density: 50 ~ 70%

- Maximum number of storeys is 2 (height  $h \leq 11m$  including the steep roof)

- Coefficient of land use: 0,62

- Front width:  $> 4m$

- Foundation height compared with the pavement:  $\leq 0,15m$

*b) Requirements of planning and architecture:*

- Houses with steep roofs
- Shapes, decorating patterns, colours, materials, appearance: beautiful, simple, suitable with landscapes and ancient architecture.
- Take the plan of land releasing and building density reduction into account in order to implement the plan of growing green trees and amusement sites.

Article 9: Regulations on construction along the roads surrounding the Imperial Citadel.

a) For roads adjacent to the Citadel, including Le Huan, Dang Thai Than, Doan Thi Diem, 23/8.

- Remain the state of land use of existing households and public services, do not distribute land to any plans of rebuilding or reforming evaluated and statistically protected garden houses, be only allowed to transfer land use rights on the existing basis and do not build fragmentedly.
- The maximum number of storeys: 1, steep roofs (brick or coloured cement), maximum height is not over 4m, excluding the slope to create an abundance of roof architectures.
- Land use density: <50%.
- Works moving backward 6m from the construction limit (for newly built and expanded works) but there must be solutions to arrange suitable fences to create a uniform style with other existing fences.
- Colour of the works: harmonize with the ancient monuments and be composed of pale colours such as light yellow, light brown, grey and white.
- Architectural forms reflecting Vietnam's architectural style, use of building materials in harmony with the ancient monuments and natural landscapes such as gardens, ponds, lakes ...

b) For roads adjacent to the walls, including Ông Ích Khiêm, Xuân 68, Lương Ngọc Quyến, Tôn Thất Thiệp: build 1-storey and steep-roofed houses with height  $\leq 4\text{m}$  (not including the roofs). Building line from the construction limit is 6m. Be allowed to build 2-storey houses to the opposite side of the walls, but building line from the construction limit is 12m.

c) For roads surrounding the Lục Bộ and Tam Tòa, including Lê Thánh Tôn (the section from Ông Ích Khiêm to Đình Công Tráng and from Nguyễn Chi Diểu to Mai Thúc Loan), Đình Công Tráng (the section from Đình Tiên Hoàng to Lê Thánh Tôn), Nguyễn Chí Diểu (the section from Đình Tiên Hoàng to Đình Tiên Hoàng): build 1-storey and steep-roofed houses with height  $\leq 4\text{m}$  (not including the roofs). Building line from the construction limit is 6m. Be allowed to build 2-storey houses but building line from the construction limit is 12m. When repairing or renovating the houses, be sure to remain ancient architectural styles.

d) For roads Mai Thúc Loan (the section from Huỳnh Thúc Kháng to Đình Tiên Hoàng), Đình Tiên Hoàng (the section from Đình Công Tráng to Nguyễn Chi Diểu, and from Mai Thúc Loan to Nhật Lệ), Nguyễn Trãi (the section from Thạch Hãn to Thái Phiên): be allowed to build terraced houses and next to the construction limit.

e) Eo Bàu area: be allowed to repair on the basis of 1-storey houses, but do not infringe the relics, height  $\leq 4\text{m}$  (not including the roofs)

g) The area adjacent to the inner side of the Gates: Do not build two-storey houses on the land within a radius of 50 meters (the central point of the circle is that of the surface which crosses the inner side of the Gates).

h) The remaining paths in the Imperial area:

- Building density  $< 60\%$
- Maximum number of storeys is 2; height  $h \leq 11\text{m}$  including the roof; building line moves backward 3 meters from the construction limit.



- *Colour of the works: harmonize with the ancient monuments and be composed of pale colours such as light yellow, light brown, grey and white.*

- *Architectural forms reflecting Vietnam's architectural style, use of building materials in harmony with the ancient monuments and natural landscapes such as gardens, ponds , lakes ...*

Article10: *Office buildings, public service works. The total area of office buildings and public service works is 29,99 ha.*

*Including:*

- *Office buildings: 2,83 ha*

- *Public service works: 27,16 ha*

*a) Criteria of land use:*

- *Office building density: 50%; public service building density: 40%*

- *Maximum number of storeys: 2; steep roofs*

- *Coefficient of land use: Offices:  $K = 0,71$ ; Public services:  $K = 0,5$*

- *Building line from the construction limit for office buildings and public service works are  $\square 6m$  and  $\square 8m$  respectively.*

- *Parking lots are situated in the middle of the boundary and meet the criteria of  $0,8 m^2$ / one officer and of  $\square 1,2 m^2$  / one customer.*

*b) Requirements of planning and architecture:*

- *Shapes, decorating patterns, colours, building materials, fences, gates: beautiful, simple, suitable with landscapes and ancient architecture.*

- *Encouraged to build fences using green trees, bonsais, shade trees, flowerbeds, and lawns.*

Article11: Industrial and handicraft industry zone including the textile industry Phu Xuan with an area of 2.3 ha and handicraft zones with an area of 5.12 ha: remain unchanged and gradually moved outside of the Citadel.

a) Criteria of land use:

- Building density: < 35%
- Maximum number of storeys: 2; steep roofs
- Coefficient of land use: 0,52
- Building line from the construction limit is  $\square$  6m.
- Parking lots are situated within the boundary to serve the need of factory workers and manufacture requirements.

b) Requirements of planning and architecture:

- Appropriately plan the location of the manufacture areas and other ones, minimize the discard of dust and sewage that affects badly on the environment.
- Shapes, decorating patterns, colours, building materials, fences, gates: beautiful, simple, suitable with surrounding landscapes.
- Encouraged to build fences using green trees, shade trees, and trees that can protest against dust.

Article12: Systems of lakes, Ngự Hà (Royal Canal) River, and ancient drainage, etc.

Area: 29,34 ha

Area 4 of the Citadel Ward has more than 40 ancient lakes and ancient drainage system in the Imperial Area. In addition to some new culverts and ditches recently built, good management of drainage system will ensure better environment and landscapes, introduce the former system of drainage treatment

*in the Citadel, as well as extend the lifespan of the ancient works directly related to this system .*

*a) Main lakes such as Tịnh Tâm, Tàng Thơ, Xã Tắc:*

*- Do not construct to the side of the relics. Be allowed to build □ 4-meter-in-height bungalows to the opposite side of the relics (not including the roof).*

*- Building line from the construction limit is 6m. Be able to build 2-storey houses that move backward 12m from the construction limit.*

*- Reserve land to build paths along the lakes and plant green trees.*

*b) Ngự Hà (Royal Canal) River:*

*- Do not build houses along the riverbank; only build some small works i.e. kiosks and benches to serve passersby.*

*- Building line from the construction limit is 6m. Be able to build 2-storey houses that move backward 12m from the construction limit.*

*c) Ancient lakes and drainage system in the Imperial Area:*

*- Works move back from the edge of the talus at least 6m; save 3m to make way for walkways around the lakes and trees.*

*- Works are 3m away from the ancient culverts and ditches.*

*Article 13: Parks, flower gardens, trees, including flower gardens in the relics and public flower gardens.*

*Area of public flower gardens is 29,7 ha.*

*a) Criteria of land use:*

*Building density and coefficient of land use:*

*- For flower gardens in the relics: follow the ordinance of protecting the relics.*

*- For public flower gardens: building density < 5%*

*b) Requirements of planning and architecture:*

*Planning layouts, architectural styles of small works, tree arrangements, choice of tree, grass and flower species shall be consistent with the Nguyễn Dynasty royal gardens and with the local climate and soil.*

*Article 14: The chief works and technological infrastructure:*

*a) Scraping for drainage*

*1. When scraping for any new works in the Imperial Area, make sure that the private foundation of these works is  $\square + 3,20$  (particularly considering each lot and approval).*

*2. The system of lakes inside the Imperial Area and Ngự Hà (Royal Canal) River is ensured to have lakeside protection line, to be regularly dredged (once a year), not to be encroached, and not to be poured wastes into.*

*3. The system of sewage, access gully and inspection chamber shall be regularly washed and dredged before the rainy season.*

*4. Gates and drainage ports through these Gates shall be strictly managed to operate in the rainy season.*

*b) Environmental sanitation:*

*1. Drainage system of wastewater and pumping stations shall be periodically maintained.*

*2. Industrial wastewater from Phu Xuan Textile factory shall be processed according the Standard 5945 before pouring into the general drainage system.*

*c) Transportation: Note that the total land requirement boundary of the construction limits of the roads in the Citadel has been marked. The planning management shall be reliant on these total land requirement boundaries to locate the works.*

*In which:*

- Roads that have 15-to-18-meter sectional diameters (roadway width: 7,0m, pavement width: 5,75m x 2).

- Roads that have 10-to-14-meter sectional diameters (roadway width: 3m6 – 5m5, pavement width: 3m – 5m).

*d) Electricity Supply:*

- Medium-voltage lines in the Citadel are to go underground in the cable.

- All electrical substations of 22 / 0.4 KV are to build secret unnamed posts with the outside of the substations designed to be consistent with the architecture of Hué Citadel.

*e) Water Supply:*

- Water pipes under the pavement are to ensure equal distances from the exterior surface of the tube to other surrounding works and pipes (defined according to the pipe diameter, geological state, and work characteristics) and to be not less than the following provisions:

- Away from house and work foundations: 3m

- Away from the ditch edge or the foot of car ramps: 1,5m – 2m

- Away from the telephone cables: 0,5m

- Away from the high-voltage wires up to 22 KV: 1m

- Away from outer surface of rain drainage pipes: 1,5m

- Away from the street lampposts: 1,5m

- Away from high-voltage pylons: 3m

- Away from fences: 1,5m

- Away from the centre line of trees: 1,5 – 2m.”

## ANNEX NO.2

### LIST OF PROPOSED PUBLIC INVESTMENT IN MEDIUM TERM IN THE RESTORATION OF THE COMPLEX OF HUE MONUMENTS, PERIOD 2016 – 2020

Unit/Currency: million VND

Item no.	List of projects	Location of construction	Timing	Decision of Investment		Period 2011-2015					Period 2016-2020					Notes
				Decision ref. D/M/Y	Total investment	Accumulation of disbursement until 2014	Plan of 2015			Five year plan of 2016-2020						
							Total (from all sources)	Of which		Total (from all sources)	Of which					
								Targeted Budget	Including: Budget for infrastructure		NTPs (National Target Programs)	Targeted Budget	Budget for infrastructure	Sponsored +External mobilization	Loans	
A	RESTORATION WORKS				5,801,065	268,134	149,000	95,500	49,000	4,500	2,875,000	585,000	430,000	260,000	1,600,000	
I	Completed projects				62,894	55,445	2,400		2,400		1,704		1,704			
1	Restoration of Long An Palace	Huế	2008-2011		25,395	25,423	500		500							
2	Restoration and emergency rescue of titled roof of the Royal Theatre/Duyệt Thị Đường (in compensation with the works of 2013)	Huế	2013		1,769		1,500		1,500							
3	Restoration of the Observatory Monument/Quan Tượng Đài	Huế	2012-2013		3,040	2,660	400		400							
4	Toilets in the complex of Kings' tombs Minh Mạng, Tự Đức, Khải Định and movable toilets in the Main Royal Gate		2011-2012		4,146	4,050					90		90			

5	Restoration of Long Đức Palace	Huế	2009-2013		2,068	1,647					44		44			
6	Restoration of Xiển Võ Từ	Huế	2009-2013		1,298	1,153					96		96			
7	Restoration and Adaptation of the Tê Tữu monuments	Huế	2010-2011		2,160	1,858					250		250			
8	Restoration of Biều Đức pavillion - Thiệu Trị Tomb	Huân g Thủy	2005-2012		19,450	15,428					1,017		1,017			
9	Demining in the area of Hộ Thành Hào	Huế	2012-2013		3,568	3,226					207		207			
<b>II</b>	<b>Completed projects and opened for use prior to 31/12/2014</b>				<b>24,821</b>	<b>16,700</b>	<b>5,700</b>		<b>5,700</b>		<b>2,421</b>		<b>2,421</b>			
1	Restoration of Dục Lang DL-02B, Inner City	Huế	2013-2014	1991, dated 30/10/2012	10,946	8,700	500		500		1,746		1,746			
2	Preservation and Restoration of Tà Trạ monument – Imperial City	Huế	2013-2014	1879, dated 15/10/2012	11,185	6,500	4,200		4,200		485		485			
3	Installation of the anti-lightning system at Huế monuments (phase 2)		2014	2260, dated 31/10/2013	2,690	1,500	1,000		1,000		190		190			
<b>III</b>	<b>On-going projects in 2015</b>				<b>351,514</b>	<b>195,989</b>	<b>65,200</b>	<b>27,000</b>	<b>33,700</b>	<b>4,500</b>	<b>76,325</b>	<b>52,259</b>	<b>24,066</b>			
	<b>a. On-going projects shall be completed prior to 31/12/2015</b>				<b>281,159</b>	<b>172,744</b>	<b>54,200</b>	<b>16,000</b>	<b>33,700</b>		<b>54,215</b>	<b>30,149</b>	<b>24,066</b>			
1	Comprehensive Restoration of the Royal Main Gate – Imperial City (Phase 1)	Huế	2013-2015	1950, dated 25/10/2012	43,380	27,200	14,000	14,000			2,180	2,180				
2	Restoration and Adaptation of Thiệu Phương Garden (phase 1)	Huế	2014-2017	2262, dated 31/10/2013	14,420	10,083	2,000	2,000			2,337	2,337				
3	Restoration of Thái Bình Lâu	Huế	2007-2014	488, dated 16/3/2005	24,293	20,330	3,000		3,000		963		963			

4	Restoration of Chiêu Kỉnh Palace	Huế	2013-2015	860, dated 2/5/2013	2,060	1,060	1,000		1,000		0					
5	Restoration of the Pavillion 3B – Long Pavillion in Forbidden City	Huế	2014-2015	1585, dated 20/8/2013	11,104	4,130	3,000		3,000		3,974		3,974			
6	Restoration of the Tả Tùng Tự monument - Thê Miếu	Huế	2014-2015	1791, dated 18/9/2013	11,500	4,040	4,500			4,500	2,960		2,960			
7	Restoration of King Gia Long Tomb (phase 3- Gia Thành Palace)	H.Trà	2013-2015	2319, dated 6/12/2012	42,020	30,077	7,000		7,000		4,943		4,943			
8	Restoration and Promotion of the values of the monuments at King Thiệu Trị Tomb. Components: Tả, Hữu Tùng Viện.	H.Th ủy	2013-2015	956, dated 21/5/2013	22,443	7,500	6,700		6,700		8,243		8,243			
9	Restoration of the monuments in the King Tự Đức Tomb. Components: Xung Khiêm Tả, Dũ Khiêm Tả, Khiêm Cung Môn	Huế	2013-2015	118, dated 21/1/2013	27,374	13,036	5,000		5,000		9,338	9,338				
13	Seedlings Garden – Literature Temple	H.Trà	2014-2016	1781, dated 11/9/2013	6,222	2,239	1,000		1,000		2,983		2,983			
10	Restoration of the complex of King Đồng Khánh Tomb (phase 1)	Huế	2008-2015	1587, dated 10/7/2008	76,343	53,049	7,000		7,000		16,294	16,294				
	<b>b. On-going projects until 2016-2020</b>				<b>70,355</b>	<b>23,245</b>	<b>11,000</b>	<b>11,000</b>			<b>22,110</b>	<b>22,110</b>				
11	Restoration of Poetic Pavillion – Capital City	Huế	2014-2016	2259, dated 31/10/2013	24,800	12,100	5,000	5,000			7,700	7,700				



12	Restoration of Triệu Miếu	Huế	2014-2017	2261, dated 31/10/2013	45,555	11,145	6,000	6,000			14,410	14,410				700.000 USD sponsored by the Department of Foreign Affairs of the United States
<b>IV</b>	<b>New projects to start in 2015</b>				<b>229,361</b>		<b>75,700</b>	<b>68,500</b>	<b>7,200</b>		<b>153,661</b>	<b>139,497</b>	<b>14,164</b>			
1	Restoration of the Nhật Thành Pavilion	Huế	2015-2017	2248 dated 30/1/2014	28,483		11,500	11,500			16,983	16,983				
2	Restoration of Phu Văn Pavilion	Huế	2015-2016	2154 dated 23/10/2014	11,966		4,200		4,200		7,766		7,766			
3	Restoration and Adaptation of Thiệu Phương Garden. Components: Vạn Tự Hồi Lang, Cẩm Xuân Đường, Di Hiên Đường, Vĩnh Phương Hiên, Hàm Xuân Hiên and garden landscape.	Huế	2015-2019	2246, dated 30/10/2014	74,108		25,000	25,000			49,108	49,108				
4	Restoration of the larger Capital City (Component: Restoration) – Southern side of Capital City	Huế	2011-2020	1918, dated 14/9/2011; 174, dated 23/1/2015	9,398		3,000		3,000		6,398		6,398			
5	Restoration of King Tự Đức Tombs. Components: Lương Khiêm Điện, Chí Khiêm Đường, Lễ Khiêm Vu, Pháp Khiêm Vu, Tiểu Khiêm Trì and Lưu Khiêm Lake.	Huế	2015-2019	2247 dated 30/10/2014	105,406		32,000	32,000			73,406	73,406				
<b>V</b>	<b>Projects to start in 2016</b>				<b>2,150,237</b>						<b>1,752,606</b>	<b>333,927</b>	<b>120,679</b>	<b>98,000</b>	<b>1,200,000</b>	
1	Restoration of Kiến Trung Palace – Forbidden City	Huế	2016-2020		125,079						125,079	125,079				

2	Restoration of Tĩnh Tâm Lake (phase 1) - Capital City	Huế	2016-2018		45,000						45,000	45,000			
3	Comprehensive Restoration of Royal Main Gate – Imperial City. Components: Painting the Five Phoenix Pavilion and infrastructure improvement	Huế	2016-2018		44,848						44,848	44,848			
4	Preservation and Restoration of the monuments in Triệu Tổ Miếu, Inner City. Components: Thần Trụ, Thần Khố, hệ thống tường thành, các cổng, sân, đường, cây xanh và hạ tầng kỹ thuật.	Huế	2016-2019		45,000						45,000	45,000			
5	Restoration and Promotion of the complex of King Minh Mạng Tomb. Components: Tả, Hữu Tùng Viện, Bái Đình courtyard and infrastructure.	H.Trà	2016-2018	71, dated 3/1/2015	26,543						26,543		26,543		
6	Restoration and Promotion of the complex of King Thiệu Trị Tomb. Components: Hồng Trạch Môn, Tả Hữu Phối Điện, courtyard, the area of Tâm Điện..., infrastructure and plants	H.Th ủy	2016-2019		45,000						45,000	45,000			
7	Restoration of Huế Imperial City. Components: Imperial walls	Huế	2016-2018		24,486						24,486		24,486		
8	Restoration of the Elephant Roaring Temple. Component: Long Châu Palace.	Huế	2016-2017		14,371						14,371		14,371		
9	Restoration of Tế Từ (phase 2)	Huế	2016		852						852		852		
10	Restoration of Di Luân Hall – Literature Temple	Huế	2016	69, dated 13/1/2015	3,185						3,185		3,185		
11	Restoration of Hòn Chén Temple	Huế	2016-2020		90,000						90,000			90,000	

12	Construction of the Parking area at the King Khải Định tomb	Huân g Thủy	2016		6,020						6,020		6,020			Propose to adjust for increasing of budget in the second semester of 2015
13	Construction of the Parking area at the King Minh Mạng tomb	Huân g Trà	2016-2017		5,959						5,959		5,959			
14	Construction of public toilets at the monuments sites (phase 3)		2016-2017		3,000						3,000		3,000			Propose to adjust for increasing of budget in the second semester of 2015
15	Restoration of Thọ Ninh Palace (phase 2)	Huế	2016-2017		10,118						10,118		10,118			
16	Installation of the low voltage 0,4 Kv at the Flag pole – Royal Main Gate	Huế	2016		4,000						4,000		4,000			
17	Restoration of 2 belvederes – Flag pole	Huế	2016-2017		500						500		500			
18	Restoration of the monument Bì Đình – King Tự Đức tomb	Huế	2016	70, dated 13/1/2015	2,459						2,459		2,459			
19	Construction of the anti-lightning system at the heritage sites (phase 3)		2016-2017	2782, dated 30/12/2014	3,186						3,186		3,186			
20	Installation of the outdoor lighting system at the Royal Main Gate area.	Huế	2016		10,000						8,000			8,000		Allocated 2 billion VND for 2015

21	Infrastructure, landscape at the monument sites and King tombs		2016-2020		395,631						15,000	15,000				
	21.1. Improvement of the landscape in the gardens of the Inner City		2016-2017		10,000						10,000	10,000				
	21.2. Improvement of the landscape in the gardens of the King Minh Mạng tomb		2016-2017		5,000						5,000	5,000				
22	Preservation and Restoration of the Huế Capital City (Components: restoration)	Huế	2011-2020	1918, dated 14/9/2011	530,000						530,000	14,000	16,000		500,000	
23	Relocation and compensation for rehabilitation in the core zone (zone 1) of heritage sites	Huế	2016-2020		500,000						500,000				500,000	
24	Construction of housings for rehabilitation of the households relocated from the zone 1 of heritage sites	Huế	2016-2020		200,000						200,000				200,000	
<b>VI</b>	<b>On-going projects in the period 2017-2020</b>				<b>1,600,644</b>						<b>681,283</b>	<b>59,317</b>	<b>221,966</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>400,000</b>	
	<b>a. Projects to be completed in the period 2017-2020</b>				<b>953,948</b>						<b>558,317</b>	<b>14,317</b>	<b>144,000</b>		<b>400,000</b>	
1	Restoration of Cần Chánh Palace – Forbidden City	Huế	2017-2020		150,000						150,000				150,000	
2	Master Planning for the restoration and promotion of the heritage values of the Huế Royal Antiquities Museum.	Huế	2017-2020		250,000						250,000				250,000	
3	Restoration of Thái Hòa Palace – Imperial City	Huế	2017-2020		75,000						75,000		75,000			
4	Restoration of the walls and gates - Forbidden City	Huế	2018-2020		15,000						15,000		15,000			
5	Restoration of Nghênh Lương Đình	Huế	2017-2018		15,000						15,000		15,000			

6	Restoration of Khâm Thiên Giám	Huế	2017-2018	1690 dated 19/8/2014	12,000						12,000		12,000			
7	Restoration of the Nam Giao esplanade	Huế	2019-2020		10,000						10,000		10,000			
8	Installation of the Lighting system at the Ngọ Môn square nad Flag pole area	Huế	2017		7,000						7,000		7,000			
9	Technical Infrastructure of the Imperial City	Huế	2017		10,000						10,000		10,000			
10	Infrastructure and Landscape of the monuments and King tombs		2017-2020		395,631						14,317	14,317				
	10.1. Seedlings Garden (phase 2)		2017-2020		10,000						10,000	10,000				
	10.2. Master Planning for the conservation and restoration of the flora at the monuments		2017-2020		4,317						4,317	4,317				
	<b>b. Projects to be completed after 2020</b>				<b>1,174,290</b>						<b>319,966</b>	<b>45,000</b>	<b>112,966</b>	<b>162,000</b>		
1	Restoration of Cơ Hạ Garden - Huế Imperial City	Huế	2017-2022		137,696						50,000	25,000	25,000			
2	Restoration of Tĩnh Tâm Lake (phase 2) - Huế Capital City	Huế	2018-2022		95,000						20,000		20,000			
3	Restoration of Huế Imperical City. Components: Embankment, Dredging, Construction of walking trail, water discharge system, etc.	Huế	2018-2023		200,000						22,966		22,966			
4	Comprehensive Restoration and Promotion of the heritage at the King Minh Mạng tomb. Hạng mục: Điều Ngự Đĩnh, Nghinh Lương Quán, Quan Lan Sở, Embankment, Dredging of the	H.Trà	2018-2022		50,000						10,000	10,000				

	lakes.															
5	Comprehensive Restoration and Promotion of the heritage at the King Gia Long tomb (Components: the area of Minh Thành Palace: Minh Thành Palace and Tả, Hữu Tông Viện; the area of Gia Thành Palace: Tả Phối Điện, Hữu Phối Điện, Tả Tông Viện, Hữu Tông Viện, Painting Gia Thành, Cung Môn, infrastructure; tomb of Queen Thuận Thiên)	Huống Trà	2018-2022		117,000						10,000	10,000				
6	Comprehensive Restoration and Promotion of the heritage at the King Đồng Khánh tomb (Components: lake; King Đồng Khánh tomb; tombs of Kiên Thái Vương; the Second Prince/Hoàng Nhì; Prince Cảnh, Tảo Thương, Thánh Cung and related infrastructure..)	Huế	2018-2022		47,000						10,000		10,000			
7	Comprehensive Restoration and Promotion of the Areas of Six Ministries (Lục Bộ)	Huế	2018-2022		100,000						10,000		10,000			
8	Restoration of the tombs of Nguyen Lords	Huống Trà	2019-2022		25,000						10,000		10,000			
9	Restoration of King Dục Đức tomb.	Huế	2019-2023		90,000						10,000		10,000			
10	Comprehensive Restoration of the Thái Miếu area	Huế	2019-2023		150,000						62,000			62,000		
11	Restoration of the historical monuments Xã Tắc esplanade-Capital City	Huế	2020-2022		12,594						5,000		5,000			

12	Restoration of the Internal Ministry/Phủ Nội Vụ - Imperial City	Huế	2019-2025		150,000						100,000			100,000		
<b>VI I</b>	<b>Preparation for Investment</b>		<b>2016-2020</b>		<b>10,000</b>						<b>10,000</b>		<b>10,000</b>			

**Summary of the total investment  
proposed for the period 2016-2020:**

**2,875,000** Million VND

*Of which:*

Million VND

1. Budget from the Targeted Programs:	585,000	Million VND
2. Budget for Infrastructure and Essential Construction:	430,000	Million VND
3. Sponsorship + External mobilization:	260,000	Million VND
4. Loans	1,600,000	Million VND

### ANNEX NO.3

#### LIST OF RELEVANT PROJECTS AND ACHIEVEMENTS IN THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE MANAGEMENT PLAN OF THE COMPLEX OF HUẾ MONUMENTS UNTIL 2020

Item no.	Key Assignments	Main agency in charge	Cooperation Agencies	Deadline	Deliverables
1.	Regulations on Management of monuments sites	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	People's Committee of Huế City and districts of Phú Vang, Phú Lộc and related agencies	31/12/2015	Decision
2.	Regulations on Construction in the urban wards of the City Center	Department of Construction	People's Committee of Huế City, Dept. of Culture, Sports and Tourism and related agencies	31/12/2015	Decision
3.	Survey and rehabilitation of local residents from the core zone (zone 1) of their heritage sites	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	People's Committee of Huế City and districts of Phú Vang, Phú Lộc and related agencies	30/6/2016	Proposal
4.	Issue the Certification of land use of the monuments	Department of Natural Resources and Environment	People's Committee of Huế City and districts of Phú Vang, Phú Lộc and related agencies	31/12/2016	Decision and relevant documents
5.	Application of GIS	Huế Management and	Department of	31/12/2016	Proposal



	Technology in the management of monuments	Conservation Centre	Information and Communication and related agencies		
6.	Adjustment of the protected zones of the monuments	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism, People's Committees and related agencies in relevant areas	31/12/2016	Documentation + Technical Drawings
7.	Develop the restoration projects of monuments for the period 2010 – 2020 according to the Decision no. 818/QĐ-TTg dated 07/6/2010 by Prime Minister	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	Related agencies	31/12/2020	Project Proposal
8.	Develop a proposal on strengthening the capacity and organizational structure of the Huế Management and Conservation Centre	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	Department of Information and Communication, Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism and related agencies	31/12/2016	Proposal
9.	Continue the restoration of the monuments in the follow-ups of the projects in the period 2008-2015	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	Related agencies	31/12/2015	11 sites
10.	Implement the public	Huế Management and	Related agencies	31/12/3020	39

	investment in medium term of the restoration of the Complex of Huế monuments period 2016 – 2020	Conservation Centre			sites
11.	Promote and Raise public awareness on the values of the Complex of Huế monuments until 2020	Huế Management and Conservation Centre	Department of Information and Communication, Department of Culture, Sports and Tourism and related agencies	31/12/2015	Proposal